GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

CLASS 3374
CALL NO 417.8 Lam

D.G.A. 79.

MUNSHI RAM MANOHAR LAL
Booksellers & Publishers
NAI SARAK DELHI

INTRODUCTION TO THE DEVANAGARI SCRIPT

FOR STUDENTS OF
SANSKRIT, HINDI, MARATHI
GUJARATI AND BENGALI

INTRODUCTION TO THE DEVANAGARI SCRIPT

FOR STUDENTS OF SANSKRIT, HINDI, MARATHI GUJARATI AND BENGALI

BY

H. M. LAMBERT, M.A.Cantab.

Senior Lecturer in Marathi (Maharaja Gaekwad's Lectureship) in the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London

WITH A FOREWORD BY

PROFESSOR J. R. FIRTH, O.B.E., M.A.

Professor of General Linguistics in the University of London

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY (New Delhi)

417.8
Lam

3374

GEOFFREY CUMBERLEGE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

MUNSHI RAM MANOHAR LAL

SANSKRIT & HINDI BOOK-SELLERS

NAI SARAK, DELHI-6.

Oxford University Press, Amen House, London E.C. 4

GLASGOW NEW YORK TORONTO MELBOURNE WELLINGTON
BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS KARACHI CAPE TOWN IBADAN

Geoffrey Cumberlege, Publisher to the University

First published 1953

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.
Acc. No. 3374
Date 10. 9. 55.
Call No. 417.8/Lam

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

FOREWORD

IT is a commonplace of linguistics to acknowledge the debt we owe to the ancient Indian grammarians and to couple with it the name of Sir William Jones. It was he who first set a proper value on the Devanagari and Arabic scripts in his dissertation as President of the Asiatic Society of Bengal on the Orthography of Asiatic Words in Roman Letters. His chart of suggested symbols for the transliteration of the Devanagari, with the addition of letters for Arabic and Persian, is the first presentation of what may be called a phonetic alphabet on such a scale. He finds the Arabic alphabet almost perfect for Arabic itself:—

'Not a letter could be added or taken away without manifest inconvenience. The same may indubitably be said of the Dévanágarí system, which, as it is more naturally arranged than any other, shall here be the standard of my particular observations on Asiatic letters. Our English alphabet and orthography are disgracefully and almost ridiculously imperfect.'

He aims at using diacritics *common in Europe* rather than new letters—and symbols from 'fluxions' or mathematics—so as to equal the Devanagari itself in precision and clearness.

A system of writing and spelling is the foundation of a system of grammar. Meillet went so far as to say that the foundations of the science of grammar were laid by the Indians. For all languages employing forms of the Devanagari script, the writing system and the spelling carry implications of phonological analysis and statement. They are at once practice and theory and deserve the first attentions of all students. This is well illustrated in Miss Lambert's work on the Devanagari script, and it will be agreed that the presentation of the phonological patterns, such as 'junctions' occurring in words or arising out of 'sandhi' in Sanskrit, and other characteristic patterns in the modern languages, is clear, systematic, and original, and particularly interesting in Bengali. The treatment of conjunct characters in the third chapter of each section is new, and apart from its intrinsic interest may be taken as an indication of what is lost when the structure of the Devanagari system is superseded by the usual roman transliterations. In addition to this study of the writing system, attention is rightly given here to calligraphy, for the practice of the hand is an obligation no less compelling than that of the tongue and both are expressions not only of courteous relations but of disciplined knowledge.

Miss Lambert has consistently applied the All-India Roman Alphabet to all five languages in order to make comparison possible whether the languages are known to the student or not. This treatment could be extended to the Dravidian languages. By this

means it has been found possible to make a systematic statement of the various conventions governing the use of the Sanskritic writing system for the modern languages.

The Sanskrit and Hindi sections are published separately in one volume since they employ one script and will presumably be more generally required, but the appeal of the entire work is to those whose interests range from India through Further India to the Indonesian Islands following the Sanskritic system of writing.

I have been acquainted with Miss Lambert's work in Indian studies since 1937, first in Western India and later as a colleague in London. It gave me great pleasure to be asked to write this brief foreword to her work on a subject which I have always held to be of high importance and the results of which are now offered to students of Sanskrit and the four principal Sanskritic languages of India.

J. R. FIRTH

PREFACE

GOOD writing, the understanding of the writing system and the formation of a good hand, is as important a part of the study of the written language as good pronunciation is of the study of the spoken language. Yet too little time is usually given to the teaching of writing to students of Sanskrit and of the modern Indian languages; writing is generally left for the student to teach himself as best he can. The result is that many students neither have an adequate understanding of the writing system and the difference between a syllabic and an alphabetic method of representation, nor know how the characters of the script are written and what features are important for the formation of a cultured literate hand. It is hoped that this book will provide not only a guide to students learning to write the scripts which are described in each section, but will also give them a fuller understanding of the special nature of the scripts and the adjustments which are made in the Sanskrit system in order to use it for writing the modern languages of northern India.

The notation used for the transcription of the scripts in this work is the All-India Roman Alphabet devised by Professor J. R. Firth of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, and used already in several publications—A. H. Harley, *Colloquial Hindustani*, T. Grahame Bailey, *Teach Yourself Hindustani*, and my own *Marathi Language Course*. The use of this transcription necessitates the use of certain conventions, particularly that of the representation of the 'inherent vowel', in final characters when listing the contents of each section of the work. The transcription of the Sanskrit terms in the Sanskrit section is entirely systematic; but owing to the varying realization of the characters of the script in certain positions in words in the modern languages, it has been necessary to use in the Contents of the other sections certain conventions which are discussed in the text. An example of such conventions occurs in the writing of such Sanskrit terms, used by grammarians in the modern languages, as 'ənтəsth' and 'uuṣm', in which the realization of the 'inherent vowel' of the final character varies from a short glide-vowel to a full syllable. As it is beyond the scope of this work to make a fine analysis of the varying realization of such final characters, it is necessary to establish certain conventions with regard to the transcription of them. These conventions are of necessity anticipated in the Contents.

Some degree of repetition has been inevitable in order to preserve the basic unity of the description of the Devanagari system of writing while allowing for specialization

in each of the languages. While this repetition may at times seem irksome to the reader, it has the advantage of facilitating comparison of one section with another.

The words given in each section to illustrate the writing and reading of the various scripts have been selected in order to provide examples of every character or combination of characters which occurs in the language under consideration. Some characters occur only in colloquial forms or in loanwords from other languages, including English. In order to illustrate the use of all the characters, examples are drawn, therefore, from the whole range of vocabulary, from colloquial forms occurring in modern speech to learned Sanskrit loanwords occurring only in literary texts. Any word which occurs in a standard dictionary is a word which the student may have to read and illustrates the use of the characters of the script.

This study of the Devanagari script owes its inspiration to the suggestion and encouragement of Professor Firth, to whom my thanks are first due. But a work of this nature could not have been accomplished without reference to experts in the languages discussed, and I am greatly indebted to my colleagues of both the Department of India, Pakistan and Ceylon, and the Department of Phonetics and Linguistics, of the School, for their co-operation and guidance. I am especially indebted to Miss G. M. Summers, formerly Lecturer in Bengali in this School, for her collaboration in the Bengali section, without which the study of the Bengali script could not have been included in this work. The two scribes who have written the script portions of the book, Miss W. Westover and Mr. P. Pritchard, must also be given recognition for their careful and accurate work.

Finally I wish to express my appreciation of the great generosity of the School of Oriental and African Studies for their subvention towards the publication of this book; and of the help and advice given by the Oxford University Press on all matters concerning its production.

H. M. L.

CONTENTS

		page
Foreword		v
Preface		vii
Introduction:	The Devanagari Script	1
	Notation	2
	Calligraphy	5

SANSKRIT SECTION

Chapter 1.	Arrangement of the Syllabary	11
	Sanskrit syllabary in roman notation	12
	Sanskrit phonetic terms	13
Chapter 2.	Characters of the Syllabary	15
	1. Consonant Characters	15
	i. Characters of the vərgiiyə group	16
	ii. Characters of the əntəhsthə group	18
	iii. Characters of the uuşmən group, and Vedic ɭə	19
	2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	21
	i. Vowel characters	21
	ii. Vowel signs	23
	3. Modifiers	26
	i. ənusvarəh	26
	ii. visərgəh	30
	4. The Complete Syllabary	31
	5. Numerals	32
	6. Punctuation	32
Chapter 3.	Conjunct Characters	33
	1. Construction of Conjunct Characters	33
	2. Contexts of Conjunct Characters	35
	3. Classification of Conjunct Characters	37
	Class 1. Two similar characters joined	38
	Class 2. Two vərgiiyə characters joined	39
	Class 3. Characters joined with əntəhsthə characters	43
	i. with following yə	43
	ii. with following və	44
	iii. with preceding or following rə	45
	iv. with preceding or following lə and ɭə	47
	Class 4. vərgiiyə characters joined with preceding or following uuşmən characters	48
	i. with ʃə , şə and sə	48
	ii. with hə	50
Transcription of reading examples		51

CONTENTS

HINDI SECTION

		page
Chapter 1.	Arrangement of the Syllabary	57
	Hindi syllabary in roman notation	59
Chapter 2.	Characters of the Syllabary	61
	1. Consonant Characters	61
	Realisation of əkar consonant characters	62
	i. Characters of the vərgiiy group	63
	ii. Characters of the əntəsth group	64
	iii. Characters of the uuṣm group	65
	2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	67
	i. Vowel Characters	67
	ii. Vowel Signs	67
	Realisation of characters in special contexts	69
	3. Modifiers	70
	i. ənusvar and cəndr-bindu	70
	ii. visərg	73
	4. The Complete Syllabary	73
	5. Numerals	74
	6. Punctuation	74
Chapter 3.	Conjunct Characters	75
	1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Hindi	75
	2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Hindi	76
	3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	76
	Class 1. Two similar characters joined	77
	Class 2. Two vərgiiy characters joined	78
	Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters	79
	i. with following yə	79
	ii. with following və	80
	iii. with preceding or following rə	80
	iv. with preceding or following lə	81
	Class 4. vərgiiy characters joined with preceding or following uuṣm characters	82
	i. with ʃə , ʂə and sə	82
	ii. with hə	83
Hindi prose passage		84
Transcription of reading examples		85

MARATHI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	91
Marathi syllabary in roman notation	92
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	94
1. Consonant Characters	95
Realisation of əkar consonant characters	96
i. Characters of the vərgiiy group	96
ii. Characters of the əntəsth group	99
iii. Characters of the uuṣm group, and ɭə	100
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	102
i. Vowel Characters	102
ii. Vowel Signs	103
Modern forms of Marathi vowel characters	103
Realisation of characters in special contexts	105
Realisation of characters of the cə-vərg	106
3. Modifiers	108
i. ənusvar	108
ii. visərg	111
4. The Complete Syllabary	112
5. Numerals	112
6. Punctuation	112
Rules of Marathi Orthography	113
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	118
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Marathi	118
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Marathi	119
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	119
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	120
Class 2. Two vərgiiy characters joined	121
Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters	122
i. with following yə	122
ii. with following və	123
iii. with preceding or following rə	124
iv. with preceding or following lə	126
Class 4. vərgiiy characters joined with preceding or following uuṣm characters	127
i. with ʃə , ʂə and sə	127
ii. with hə	128
Marathi prose passage	129
Transcription of reading examples	130

GUJARATI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	135
Gujarati syllabary in roman notation	136
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	138
1. Consonant Characters	138
Realisation of əkar consonant characters	139
i. Characters of the vərgiiy group	140
ii. Characters of the əntəsth group	142
iii. Characters of the uuşm group, and ɭə	143
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	144
i. Vowel Characters	144
ii. Vowel Signs	145
Realisation of vowels 'e' and 'o'	146
Realisation of characters in special contexts	148
Realisation of 'ɖə' and 'ɖhə'	150
Orthography of 'i' and 'u'	150
3. Modifiers	152
i. ənusvar	152
ii. visərg	154
4. The Complete Syllabary	155
5. Numerals	156
6. Punctuation	156
Rules of Gujarati Orthography	156
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	157
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati	157
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati	158
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	159
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	159
Class 2. Two vərgiiy characters joined	160
Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters	161
i. with following yə	161
ii. with following və	162
iii. with preceding or following rə	162
iv. with preceding or following lə	164
Class 4. vərgiiy characters joined with preceding or following uuşm characters	165
i. with ʃə , şə and sə	165
ii. with hə	166
Gujarati prose passage	167
Transcription of reading examples	168

BENGALI SECTION

		page
Chapter 1.	Arrangement of the Syllabary	173
	Notation	174
	Bengali syllabary in roman notation	175
	Calligraphy	177
Chapter 2.	Characters of the Syllabary	179
	1. Consonant Characters	
	i. Characters of the vərgiiẏə group	181
	Realisation of əkar consonant characters	183
	ii. Characters of the əntəsthə group	186
	iii. Characters of the uuṣmə group	188
	Realisation of əkar consonant characters in verbal forms	190
	2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	192
	i. Vowel Characters	192
	ii. Vowel Signs	194
	Realisation of consonant and vowel characters in special contexts	195
	a. Realisation of əkar consonant characters	195
	b. Realisation of vowel characters in special contexts	197
	Realisation of əntəsthə ẏə	199
	3. Modifiers	204
	i. cəndrə-bindu and ənusvarə	204
	ii. visərgə	206
	4. The Complete Syllabary	206
	5. Numerals	207
	6. Punctuation	207
Chapter 3.	Conjunct Characters	208
	1. Construction of Conjunct Characters	208
	2. Contexts and Realisation of Conjunct Characters	209
	3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	211
	Class 1. Two similar characters joined	211
	Class 2. Two vərgiiẏə characters joined	212
	Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsthə characters	214
	i. with following yə	214
	ii. with following və	216
	iii. with preceding or following rə	218
	iv. with preceding or following lə	220
	Class 4. vərgiiẏə characters joined with preceding or following uuṣmə characters	221
	i. with ʃə , ʂə and sə	221
	ii. with hə	223
Bengali prose passage		225
Transcription of Reading Examples		226

INTRODUCTION

The Devanagari Script

The script traditionally referred to as the Devanagari Script is used in writing Sanskrit and, of the modern languages of northern India, Hindi, Marathi and Nepali. The script used in writing Gujarati is a slightly modified form of the Devanagari script, and the scripts used in writing Bengali and Panjabi are related to the Devanagari script, though this relation is apparent in only some of the characters. The writing system, based on the character representing the syllable, is the same for all these languages. However, in order to use this system for writing the modern languages, which have each developed in their own particular way from the original Sanskrit, a number of conventions have become necessary in reading from the script, conventions which vary with the special features of each language. The realisation of the characters as they are used for writing Hindi, Bengali, Marathi and Gujarati, and the conventions which have become established in each language, are described in the various sections of this work. Though the Bengali script differs considerably from the Devanagari script in the form of most of the characters, the study of it is included in this work because the writing system is the same as the Sanskrit writing system, and the conventions by which

this system is adapted for writing Bengali have much in common with the conventions used in the other modern languages. An examination of these conventions makes possible an interesting comparison both between the writing of these four languages and that of Sanskrit, and between the writing of the modern languages themselves.

The origin of the name 'Devanagari' is obscure. The shorter form of the name is 'Nagari'(nagərii), which has been variously interpreted. It is thought by some to be the name given to the writing of 'the people of the city'(nəgərəm, 'a city'); by others it is said to derive its name from the Nagar Brahmans of Gujarat.

Notation

The system of roman notation used in this text for transcribing the Devanagari characters is the All-India Roman Notation[1]. Three minor modifications have been introduced in this text in order to adapt the notation for transcribing both Sanskrit and the modern languages.

These modifications are :-

i. The use of the vowels i ('short' i) and ii ('long' ii) instead of the vowels y and i ; and of the vowels u ('short' u) and uu ('long' uu) for the vowels w and u .

ii. The use of the letter ɱ instead of ŋ for representing the mark of nasalisation known as the ənusvar.

iii. The placing of a micron above the letter y in the diphthong əy , and above the letter v in the diphthong əv , thus: əў , əv̆ .

---

1. See Preface.

This mark distinguishes the transcription of the diphthongs from the transcription of combinations of characters which are realised in certain contexts as ə-y and ə-v , not distinguishable in ordinary speech, in the modern languages, from the diphthongs.

Besides these modifications, it is necessary to make certain additions to the notation in order to represent characters used in writing the modern languages but not used in Sanskrit, and certain modified characters used in Hindi and Bengali. The complete notation used in the Sanskrit syllabary is this:

Vowels: ə a i ii u uu e əў o əv̆
and r rr l ll , for the syllabic consonants.

Modifiers[1]: ṃ (representing the ənusvarə) and
h (representing the visərgə)

Consonants:

k	kh	g	gh	ṅ
c	ch	j	jh	ɲ
ṭ	ṭh	ḍ	ḍh	ṇ
t	th	d	dh	n
p	ph	b	bh	m

y r l v ; ʃ ṣ s h

ḷ , used in transcribing Vedic Sanskrit

The additional letters used in the syllabaries of the modern languages are these:

ṛ and ṛh for transcribing the modified forms of the characters representing ḍ and ḍh , in Hindi and Bengali, and for

---

1. For the use of this term, see Sanskrit section, Chapter 1.

indicating the intervocallic realisation, in certain words, of the Gujarati character representing ḍ .

q , x , ɣ , z and f , for transcribing certain modified Devanagari characters used in Hindi in writing Persian and Arabic loanwords.

ʦ , z and zh , for transcribing characters of the 'palatal' class in Marathi, when they are realised with alveolar articulation.

In modern spoken Gujarati and modern spoken Bengali, certain vowel sounds occur which are not separately represented in the script. For indicating the contexts in which such vowel sounds occur, the three symbols ɛ , ɔ and æ are used.

The sign of nasalisation, ˜ , is used in transcribing the modifier representing nasalisation[1] when it is realised, in the modern languages, as the nasalisation of a vowel and not as a nasal consonant.

This roman notation is used for writing all the Sanskrit grammatical terms referring to the syllabaries of Sanskrit and of the modern languages, the classification of the characters and the phonetic description of their realisation. The names of the languages, the scripts, and grammatical terms, such as 'sandhi'(səndhi), which are in regular use in English, are written in their conventional English form.

The Sanskrit syllabary, as arranged by the Sanskrit grammarians, is given in the roman notation in the Sanskrit section[2], and serves as a standard with which the syllabaries of the modern languages can be compared.

---

1. See Sanskrit Section, Chapter 2,3.i.a. ənusvarə.
2. ibid., Chapter 1.

Calligraphy

The writing of the Devanagari characters should be practised at first with a reed or bamboo pen. Such pens are still in use in many parts of India, and in many schools Indian children are taught first to write on a large scale with a broadly cut bamboo pen. Writing in this way will train the eye to recognise easily details of difference and will train the hand to write a standard form of the characters with the broad and thin strokes in the right place and proportion. These pens are cut in the same way as a quill pen, except that the point is cut to slant in the opposite direction from that of the quill used for English writing with the tilted axis. The English pen, when cut for the tilted axis, looks like this from the back:

writing thus:

The pen cut for the Devanagari script looks like this from the back:

writing thus:

The pen should be held in such a way that the thin line, made by the cut edge, falls from left to right at an angle of 45 degrees from a line drawn horizontally across the page. The broad stroke then forms a right-angle with the thin stroke and crosses the horizontal line of the page at an angle of 45 degrees. Care must be taken not to change the angle of the pen during the writing of curved or rounded strokes, as this will change the shape and balance of the character.

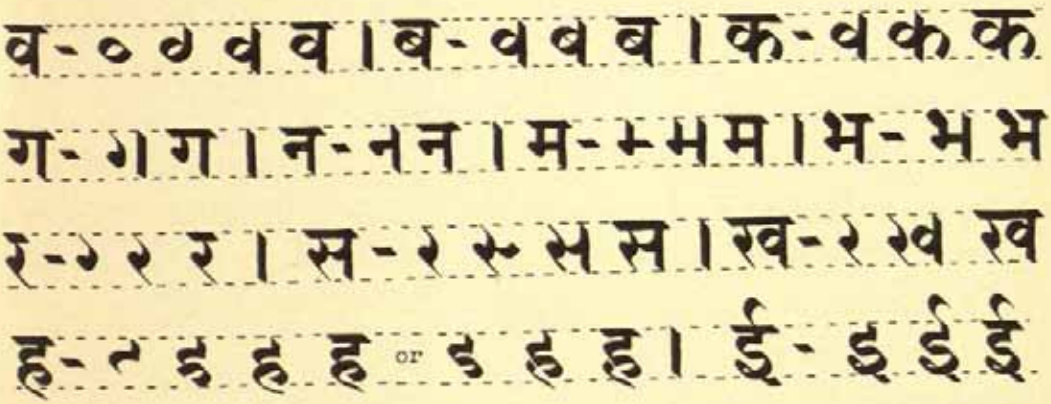
Some of the typical strokes of the script should be practised until good control of the pen, held at the right angle, is established before the characters themselves are written. For example:

The use of the broad pen should be continued until a good style of handwriting is formed; the introduction of writing with an ordinary pen, and without sufficient attention to the details of line and form, often interferes with the formation of a good hand.

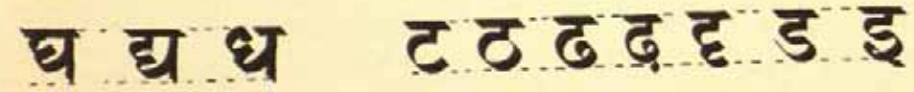
In the illustrations given below, which may be used as writing exercises, the characters are grouped so as to show different combinations of strokes, and to draw attention to similarities and to small but important differences. It will be seen that some of the characters have an upright stroke, others are curved or rounded, without an upright stroke; but all have the head-stroke, though it is not always written right across the top of the character. The alignment of the characters is made by this head-stroke, that is, by the top of the character, though there is an invisible alignment also by the bottom of the character. For this reason, it is well to practice writing at first between two lines; if one line is used, the characters should be written from the line downwards, not on the line.

The general method of writing the characters is this: first, the characteristic part of the character, usually on the left side of the upright stroke; then the upright stroke, if there is one; and finally the head-stroke. The head-stroke binds the whole character together, as will be seen when vowel signs and other marks are added. The general direction of making the strokes is from the top downwards, and from left to right. But the order of the strokes in some characters, and their direction, differ from this general rule, and where this is so, the calligraphy of particular characters is illustrated when these are introduced in the chapters which follow.

Examples of Devanagari characters, showing the order in which the strokes are written:



Examples of similarity and difference between characters:



SANSKRIT SECTION

CHAPTER 1

ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

When the characters of the Devanagari Script, देवनागरी , are arranged in the traditional order, they constitute a series of syllables which may be regarded as the basis of the Sanskrit phonological system. Each character represents a syllable, and is called अक्षरम् (əkṣərəm). The series of characters in the syllabary is called वर्णमाला (vərṇəmala), and consists of:-

Fourteen vowel characters,

Two modifiers and

Thirtythree consonant characters.

The syllabary used in writing Vedic Sanskrit includes one more consonant character.

In reading aloud from the script, a vowel character is realised as a syllable consisting of a vowel, स्वरः (svərəh), and a consonant character is realised as a syllable consisting of an initial consonant, व्यञ्जनम् (vyəṇjənəm) followed by the vowel ə . This vowel, when realised with a consonant, is generally referred to in English textbooks as the 'inherent' vowel. The term 'modifier' is used here to refer to the two signs which indicate some modification in the realisation of the character with which they are written. These two signs are usually referred to individually, as the 'ənusvarəh' and the 'visərgəh', as there is no Sanskrit term which is used to refer to them together.

Each character is referred to, for instance, in spelling, as the syllable which it represents, and the particle कार (karə); for example, आकार (akarə), इकार (ikarə), ककार (kəkarə), तकार (təkarə).

The roman syllabary given below corresponds in arrangement and classification with the Devanagari syllabary. As the consonant characters are discussed first in this work, the table of consonant syllables is placed first in this syllabary.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Cacuminal	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		ŋə	ɲə	ɳə	nə	mə
Semi-vowels				yə	rə	lə	və
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS, associated with consonant-classes			ə a	i ii e əў	r rr	.l ll	u uu o əў
MODIFIERS			Nasal -ŋ		Aspirated -h		

The character represented by və in the roman table is usually realised with labio-dental articulation in reading from a Sanskrit text. The retroflex lateral consonant ḷə occurs only in Vedic Sanskrit. The vowel 'syllabic ll' does not occur in Sanskrit, but the character representing it is traditionally included in the script syllabary.

The main feature of the syllabary is the arrangement of the consonant characters in groups according to the position and the manner of articulation of the sounds which they represent. The following Sanskrit phonetic terms are used by grammarians in the description of the characters as they are classified in the syllabary:

i. The consonant characters are placed in three groups: characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant, that is, a consonant articulated with 'contact', स्पर्श: (spərʃəh,'touch'); characters representing syllables with an initial semi-vowel, that is, 'neither a consonant nor a vowel', अन्तःस्थ (əntəhsthə, 'standing between'); and characters representing syllables with an initial fricative consonant, ऊष्मन् (uuṣmən, 'heat').

ii. The five positions of articulation are: कण्ठ्य (kəṇṭhyə,'velar') or जिह्वमूलीय (jihvamuuliiyə,'root of the tongue'); तालव्य (tələvyə, 'palatal'); मूर्धन्य (muurdhənyə,'cacuminal'[1]); दन्त्य (dəntyə, 'dental') and ओष्ठ्य (oṣṭhyə, 'labial'). Labio-dental articulation is described as दन्तौष्ठ्य (dəntəvṣṭhyə).

1. This term refers to the area of the roof of the mouth with which contact is made by the tongue. Consonants of this class are also described as 'cerebral'. As the retroflexion of the tongue is an important feature in the pronunciation of consonants of this class in the modern languages, the class is described as 'retroflex' in the roman tables of those languages. Cf. Hindi, p.59.

iii. The manner of production of the sounds by which the characters are realised is described in the following terms, and in each class of plosive consonants the characters are arranged in this order:

voiceless, unaspirated - अघोष (əghoṣə[1]), अल्पप्राण (əlpəpraṇə[2])

voiceless, aspirated - अघोष (əghoṣə), महाप्राण (məhapraṇə[3])

voiced, unaspirated - घोषवत् (ghoṣəvət[4]), अल्पप्राण (əlpəpraṇə)

voiced, aspirated - घोषवत् (ghoṣəvət), महाप्राण (məhapraṇə)

nasal - अनुनासिक (ənunasikə[5]),

---

1. 'without sound', or 'voiceless'.
2. 'with little breath', or 'unaspirated'.
3. 'with big breath', or 'aspirated'.
4. 'with sound' or 'voiced'.
5. 'nasal'.

CHAPTER 2

CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the script are described in this chapter in the same order as that in which the syllables are placed in the roman syllabary: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers.

The general style of the characters varies from period to period and from region to region. In the older editions of Sanskrit works some characters are found that are now supplanted by newer and more widely used forms; and there is sometimes a marked difference in the style used in printing books in Bombay, Calcutta and other parts of India. The most commonly used of the alternative forms of some of the characters are given below, among the characters of each group. The calligraphy of any characters which are not written according to the general order of strokes given in the Introduction is illustrated when the characters are introduced.

1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters of the syllabary represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by the vowel ə . Consonant characters realised with the vowel ə are described as अकार (əkarə). If a character is to be realised as the consonant element only of the syllable, this is shown by writing the mark known as विरामः (viraməh) at the foot of the character. The writing of this mark with a character is illustrated below, after the first table.

Characters written with the viramaḥ are described as हलन्त (halanta), 'ending in a consonant'.

1. Characters of the vargiiya group (वर्गीय).

The twentyfive characters of this group are arranged, as in the roman table given above, in five classes, वर्गः (vargaḥ), representing the five positions of 'contact', स्पर्शः (sparśaḥ), used in the articulation of the plosive consonants. Each class consists of five characters, arranged in order according to the manner of production of the consonant of the syllable which they represent.

क-वर्गः ka-vargaḥ	क ka	ख kha	ग ga	घ gha	ङ ṅa
च-वर्गः ca-vargaḥ	च ca	छ cha	ज ja	झ jha	ञ ña
ट-वर्गः ṭa-vargaḥ	ट ṭa	ठ ṭha	ड ḍa	ढ ḍha	ण ṇa
त-वर्गः ta-vargaḥ	त ta	थ tha	द da	ध dha	न na
प-वर्गः pa-vargaḥ	प pa	फ pha	ब ba	भ bha	म ma

The Bombay form of the character for jha is झ , and the forms क and ऋ are found in older books printed in Calcutta. The Bombay

form of the character for ɳə is ण . The Bombay forms of these characters are used in Hindi writing, but the Hindi forms are not used in Marathi writing, or in Sanskrit books printed in Bombay.

Calligraphy.

All the characters in the above table are written in the way described in the introductory notes on calligraphy, except the following three characters: jə ज[1] ज ज ज

jhə झ झ झ झ tə त[1] त त त

The writing of the viramə̀h to indicate the realisation of a consonant character as a consonant without the vowel ə is illustrated by these characters:

क् च् ट् त् प्
k- c- ṭ- t- p-

When writing words, which may be of one or more characters, each character is written and completed with the head-stroke before the next character is written. In the reading examples which are given below, words which are usually written with the modifier known as विसर्ग: (visə̀rgə̀h)[2] are written in the form in which they occur in various contexts without this modifier. The visə̀rgə̀h is written with reading examples after the modifiers have been discussed. Verbal roots, in the form in which they are given in grammars and dictionaries, are included in the examples in order to illustrate the writing of characters with the viramə̀h.

1. The first stroke in these characters is written from right to left.
2. See below, under 3. Modifiers, ii.

Reading examples[1]

1. One character words

द ध त फ म प न च ड ग

क भ ज ब घ छ थ ख झ ञ

2. Two character words

भट पद धन कड मठ फण घन खच् दध् दम

छद् झग जड फट पथ बत छग पढ् घट गण

3. Three character words

गमक जगत् चणक मथन घटक पठक दमथ

धटक कपट भजक गणक कथम् खजक पदक

4. Four and five character words

छदनम् पणनम् नटनम् कथनम् भणनम् जनपद

गमनम् पठनम् धनमद झणझणम् झणझणम्

ii. Characters of the əntəhsthə[2] group (अन्तःस्थ)

य र ल व Bombay form ल

yə rə lə və lə

Calligraphy

lə : Hindi form [3] Bombay form [3]

These four characters are associated with four of the vərgəh, as indicated in the roman syllabary, and with four of the vowels, thus:

य , yə, associated with the cə-vərgəh, and the vowels i and ii

र , rə, associated with the ṭə-vərgəh, and the syllabic r and rr[4]

ल , lə, associated with the tə-vərgəh, and the syllabic l and ll[4]

व , və, associated with the pə-vərgəh, and the vowels u and uu

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.
2. 'standing between.' 3. This stroke is written from right to left.
4. See below, under 2. Vowel Characters.

These characters are all described as alpaprana and ghosavat. व , va , though associated with the labial class, is realised with labio-dental articulation, and described as दन्तौष्ठ्य (dantavsthya).

Reading examples[1]

1. One character words

व य र ल ब थ ख त

2. Two character words

लब जल खर वद् भर बल वर रण वठ्
लभ् यव थर लय झर रट् रण फल् रथ

3. Three character words

तरल लवण भयम् धवल जठर चरण डमर
नखर लगड चपल भवत् नयन वचर लटभ

4. Words of four or more characters

यमवत् वयनम् गरलम् पदकमल कपटवचनम्

iii. Characters of the uusmen[2] group (ऊष्मन्)

श ष स and ह
ʃa ʂa sa ha

Calligraphy

ʃa : Hindi form २ श। श Bombay form २ श। श। श

ha : i. ८ ह ह or ii. ६ ह ह

An older form of श is श , a form still used in joining this character to certain other characters. This form is illustrated later under Conjunct Characters[3].

---

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.
2. 'heat'
3. See Chapter 3.

The first three characters of this group represent syllables consisting of a fricative consonant with the vowel ə , and are described as əghoṣə and məhaprāṇə. The fourth character is realised as an aspirate followed by the vowel ə , and is described as ghoṣəvət and məhaprāṇə. The uuṣmən characters are associated with the classes thus: श , ʃə , with the cə-vərgəh; ष , ʂə , with the ṭə-vərgəh; स , sə , with the tə-vərgəh; and ह , hə , with the kə-vərgəh.

The character ह is the last consonant character in the syllabary used in writing classical Sanskrit. In writing Vedic Sanskrit one more character is used, ळ , ɭə , realised as a retroflex lateral consonant followed by the vowel ə .

Calligraphy of ळ : ८ ळ ळ ळ ळ

Reading examples[1]

1. One character words

ष ह स श प ड र ख

2. Two character words

शर सह षट् वश हस् झष रस वघ् शव
सत् शठ खश कष शस् हय हर झष भष

3. Three character words

सरल कलश जहत् वयस् शपथ समय बहल शलभ
यशस् शरट सफल सरस हरक परश रभस हतक

4. Four, five and six character words

दशरथ शकटम् सवयस् कलहम् शसनम् शतशस्
जलचरस् नवदशकम् सहगमनम् कमलवदन दशशतम्

---

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. Vowel Characters, with corresponding Vowel Signs.

A vowel which constitutes a syllable is written with a vowel character; a vowel which is part of a syllable with an initial consonant is written with a vowel sign added to a consonant character.

i. Vowel Characters.

There are fourteen vowel characters in the vərɳəmala:

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ
ə	a	i	ii	u	uu
		ऋ	ॠ	ऌ	ॡ
	Syllabic	r	rr	l	ll
		ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
		e	əў	o	əv̆

The character अ , and the other characters based on the same form, आ , ओ and औ , and the characters ऋ , ॠ , ऌ and ॡ , have these alternative forms:

अ	आ	ओ	औ	ऋ	ॠ	ऌ	ॡ
ə	a	o	əv̆	r	rr	l	ll

Both forms of these vowel characters are used in Hindi writing; only the Bombay forms are used in Marathi writing. An older form of ओ , o , is ॐ [1]. The order of writing the strokes in vowel characters is illustrated by these examples:

ə	ɔ	ɔ	अ	अ	ə	उ	ॐ	अ	अ
a	ɔ	ɔ	आ	आ	ii	इ	ई	ई	
r	ɔ	ɔ	ऋ	ऋ	l	ɔ	ॡ	ऌ	ॡ
əў	ए	ऐ	ऐ		o	अ	आ	ओ	ओ

1. See below, under 3.Modifiers,i.note c.

The vowel characters are referred to as अकार , ə-karə, आकार , a-karə, इकार i-karə, and so on. They are related to the five positions of articulation as shown in the table of the roman syllabary. The vowel ll does not occur in Sanskrit words, but the character is traditionally included in the syllabary for the sake of symmetry.

The first ten vowel characters represent five pairs of 'simple' vowels, each pair consisting of a character realised as a 'short' vowel, ह्रस्व , (hrəsvə) and a character realised as a 'long' vowel, दीर्घ , (diirghə). The remaining four characters represent vowels which are described as 'compound' or 'conjunct', संयुक्त , (səmyuktə[1]). In the system of modification and combination of vowels known as 'sandhi', सन्धिः , (səndhih), as in the formation of compound words, derived words, and the joining of final and initial vowels in consecutive words in a phrase or sentence, the vowels are grouped thus:

Simple vowels	ə	a	i	ii	u	uu	r	rr	l
गुणः (guṇəh)	ə	a	e		o		ər		əl
वृद्धिः (vrddhih)	a		əў		əў		ar		al

Examples[2]:

नगरम्	nəgərəm	--		नागरिक	nagərikə
दिव	divə	देव	devə	दैव्य	dəўvyə
भूति	bhuuti	--		भौतिक	bhəўtikə
कृ	kr	कर्	kər	कार्य	karyə
क्लृप्	klp	कल्पना	kəlpəna	काल्पनिक	kalpənikə

1. See above, Ch.1., and below,3.i. for the modifier represented by ṃ.
2. See below, ii, for the vowel signs used in these examples.

Reading examples of words with vowel characters:[1]

1. One character words

ए इ उ अ ऋ ई ऊ ओ ऐ ऌ आ औ ॠ

2. Words of more than one character

अथ इष् उत् एक इन ओत् अद् ऐश अृध्
ऊह् एध ईश उछ औम् ऋण ऊढ इह उष्
अद् अल् औम् ओख् ऋच् ऐण उदङ् ऋणम्
ईषत् ऊहनम् ऋषभ औषधम् ऐषमस् उपकरणम्

ii. Vowel Signs

Each of the vowel characters, except अ , ə , has a corresponding vowel sign which may be added to a consonant character to represent a syllable consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a - əv̆ . As the vowel ə is realised with every consonant character unless it is either marked with the viramah or has one of the vowel signs added to it, there is no sign for this vowel.

The vowel signs, added to the consonant character क , are:

क (kə)	का ka	कि ki	की kii	कु ku	कू kuu
कृ kr	कॄ krr	कॢ kl	कॣ kll[2]		
के ke	कै kəy̆	को ko	कौ kəv̆		

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.
2. See note on the vowel ll under Vowel Characters, above.

Calligraphy

The order of writing the strokes when a vowel sign is added to a consonant character is illustrated in the following examples:

ka	क	का			ku	क	कु	कु	
ki	ि	िक	कि	कि	kii	क	का	की	की
dhi	ि	िध	धि	धि	bhi	ि	िभ	भि	भि
ke	क	के	के		ko	क	का	को	को

When the vowel signs are added to consonant characters which have an upright stroke, the superscribed signs are placed above the upright stroke, and the subscribed signs are written at the foot of that stroke. When vowel signs are subscribed to rounded characters, they are written below the mid-point of the lowest curve, thus:

छु	ट्ू	ड़ु	ढ़ू	दु	ह्ू
chu	ṭuu	ḍu	ḍhuu	du	huu

Special forms

रु	रू	ट्र	शृ	ह्र
ru	ruu	dr	ʃr	hr

An older form of शु is श्रु [1], and of ह्रु is ह्रु

The vowel sign of ऋ is not written with र् . The character representing र् with ऋ is written with the superscribed stroke used to represent र् when it is to be realised before another consonant character without an intervening vowel. This stroke is placed over the vowel character ऋ , as in निर्ऋति , nirrti[2].

Mark of 'separation'.

When an initial अ or आ occurs after certain final vowels in the preceding word, the mark ऽ , known as अवग्रहः (avagrahaḥ)[3] is

1. See Ch.2,1.iii. 2. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.a. 3. 'separation'.

written after the vowel in which the final and initial vowels are coalesced, to indicate the presence of two words in the piece. The mark is written once when the initial vowel of the second word is अ , and twice when the initial vowel is आ , as in these examples:

यो	अयम्	योऽयम्	ते	अपि	तेऽपि	सदा	आत्मन्	सदाऽऽत्मन्
yo - əyəm		yo-yəm	te - əpi		te-pi	səda - atmən		səda--tmən[1]

Reading examples[2]

1. One character words

नी भू गै सृ दा जि गौ पै मे दू
कृ छि नौ है भी शृ शी दृ हि हृ

2. Two character words

दूर भीत राम चोर तिङ् दोष शृत धृत रूढ
गैर कृश् पौल क्लृप् दृढ पुर फेण मौल कृत्
पितृ मेरु दूषि भीति हृदि गुरु वृथा शिशु सेतु
ओतु ईति एतौ ऋतु इति ऊरु ऋषि एणी ईळे

3. Three character words

भूषित विशेष उपाय वैभव पितृन् पौरुष रुचिर भौमिक
कुमारी झटिति ठालिनी रूषित औषधि कैकेयी झिरिका
विधातृ ऐहिक ढालिन् सुरभि खडिका हेळते

4. Four, five and six character words

एकाकिन् हृषिकेश इतिहास कौशलेय विषूचिका पौराणिक
देवनागरी अनुनासिक औपनिषद उपजीविका औपदेशिक
उपनिवेशिक औपनायनिक कोऽपि ऋतेऽपि यशोऽपयश

---

1. त्म , tmə , the characters त् and म combined. See Chapter 3, Class 2. iii. 2. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

3. Modifiers

The two modifiers, known as अनुस्वारः (ənusvarəh) and विसर्गः (visərgəh), are signs which may be added to a character to indicate a modification in the realisation of the character. They are placed in the syllabary after the vowel characters, and, as they cannot be written alone, they are written with the character अ . They may, however, be written with any character.

1. ənusvarəh, अनुस्वारः [1]

This modifier is written as a dot above the character of which it modifies the realisation, thus:

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	ऊं	एं	ऐं	ओं	औं
əṃ	aṃ	iṃ	iiṃ	uṃ	uuṃ	eṃ	əy̆ṃ	oṃ	əv̆ṃ
कं	कां	किं	कीं	कुं	कूं	कें	कैं	कों	कौं
kəṃ	kaṃ	kiṃ	kiiṃ	kuṃ	kuuṃ	keṃ	kəy̆ṃ	koṃ	kəv̆ṃ

Calligraphy

The ənusvarəh is generally added to the character after the vowel sign has been written and before the headstroke is written to complete the character. It is placed above the middle of the character, or over the last upright stroke if there is one, and to the right side of any superscribed vowel sign, for example;

kəṃ	क	कं	कं	dəṃ	द	दं	दं	həṃ	ह	हं	हं
gaṃ	गा	गां	गां	giṃ	गि	गिं	गिं	geṃ	गे	गें	गें
dhiṃ	धि	धिं	धिं	bhiṃ	भि	भिं	भिं	roṃ	रो	रों	रों

1. 'after-sound'.

The ənusvarəh is written with a character in various contexts, and is realised in various ways according to the context.

a. When a word of which the final character represents the formative particle म् occurs in any position except at the end of a line of verse or a sentence, the character म् is omitted before an initial consonant character of a following word and the formative particle is represented by the ənusvarəh. This formative particle is usually written as म् only at the end of a line or a sentence. For example:

येतां विभूतिं योगं च--	येताम्	विभूतिम्	योगम्
yetaŋ vibhuutiŋ yogəŋ cə...	yetam	vibhuutim	yogəm

b. The ənusvarəh may be written with an initial or medial character followed by a vərgiiyə character. In this context it is realised as the nasal consonant of the class to which the following character belongs. Examples:

ŋ - ŋ	अंक əŋkə (əŋkə)	पुंख puŋkhə (puŋkhə)	लिंग liŋgə (liŋgə)
ŋ - ɲ	पंच pəɲcə (pəɲcə)	वांछ् vaɲch (vaɲch)	सिंज् siŋj (siŋj)
ŋ - ɳ	कुंठ kuŋʈhə (kuɳʈhə)	अंड əŋɖə (əɳɖə)	पिंड piŋɖə (piɳɖə)
ŋ - n	शांति ʃəŋti (ʃanti)	इंदु iŋdu (indu)	बंधु bəŋdhu (bəndhu)
ŋ - m	कंप kəŋpə (kəmpə)	अंबु əŋbu (əmbu)	कुंभ kuŋbhə (kumbhə)

Another, more usual, method of representing a homorganic nasal is that of combining the appropriate nasal consonant character with

the vərgiiyə character that follows it, that is, ङ् with characters of the kə-vərgəh, ञ् with characters of the cə-vərgəh, and so on. This method is used also when the formative particle म् occurs before an initial vərgiiyə character in a sentence, where consecutive words are joined in sandhi. The calligraphy of such combined characters is illustrated later[1]. Formative particles, such as अन्ति , -ənti, and अन्ते , -ənte, are usually written by this method and not with the ənusvarəh.

The ənusvarəh is sometimes written to represent -n or -m , in compounds formed from the prefix सम् , səm-, and words beginning with न or म ; e.g. संनत sənnətə, and संमति səmmətі.

c. When the ənusvarəh is written with a character preceding a character of the əntəhsthə or the uuṣmən group, the realisation of it varies according to the position of articulation of the character which follows it, and also with the custom of speakers in different parts of India. The ənusvarəh preceding an əntəhsthə character is realised as follows:

Before य , yə , as ŋ , m , n or ỹ ; e.g.

संयोग səŋyogə, səmyogə, sənyogə or səỹyogə

Before र , rə , as ŋ , m , n or r̃ ; e.g.

संराग səŋragə, səmragə, sənragə or sər̃ragə

Before ल , lə , as ŋ , m , n or l̃ ; e.g.

संलय səŋləyə, səmləyə, sənləyə or səl̃ləyə

Before व , və , as ŋ , m , or ṽ ; e.g.

संवाद səŋvadə, səmvadə or səṽvadə

---

1. See Chapter 3, Conjunct Characters, Class 2.b.

The ənusvarəh preceding an uuṣmən character is realised thus:

Before श , ʃə , as ŋ , m , n , or ṽ; e.g.

अंश əŋʃə, əmʃə, ənʃə or əṽʃə

Before ष , ṣə , as ŋ , m , nasalisation of the vowel, or ṽ; e.g.

हवींषि həviiŋṣi, həviimṣi, həvĩiṣi or həviiṽṣi

Before स , sə , as ŋ , m , n , or ṽ; e.g.

संसार səŋsarə, səmsarə, sənsarə or səṽsarə,

or as nasalisation of the vowel, as in

हिंसा hiŋsa, himsa, hiṽsa or hĩsa

पुंसि puŋsi, pumsi, pũsi

Before ह , hə , as ŋ , m , n , or ṽ; e.g.

सिंह siŋhə, simhə, sinhə or siṽhə

or as nasalisation of the vowel in सैंह , sə̃ỹhə

The sign ◌ॅ is sometimes written above a character preceding an entəhsthə or an uuṣmən character to indicate realisation by nasalising the vowel of the syllable instead of by a nasal consonant following the vowel. This sign is called अनुनासिक (ənunasikə[1]), and it is usually written, in preference to the ənusvarəh, in the 'sacred syllable' ॐ , (oṃ)[2]

Reading examples[3]

a. किं मां सुखं हरिं मृतं तनुं अहं पर्वं ऋषीणां

b. डिंब पांडु लैंगम् ढुंढि जृंभ् झंझा किंचित् कौंतेय

c. संयमन संवत् मांस शंयु संरूठ संलीन अंहति
तामहं हृदि संगतामनिशं भृशं रमयामि ।
किं वनेऽनुसरामि तामिह किं वृथा विलपामि ॥[4]

---

1. 'nasal'. 2. See above, under 2.i. 3. For transcription of examples, see p.52. . The lines a, b and c correspond to the notes given above under 3.i. 4. GĪtagovindakāvyam, sarga 3,v.6.

ii. visərgəh , विसर्गः 1

The visərgəh is written as two dots, placed vertically, after a character.

अः	आः	इः	ईः	उः	ऊः	ऋः	एः	ऐः	ओः	औः
əh	ah	ih	iih	uh	uuh	rrh	eh	əў h	oh	əў h
कः	काः	किः	कीः	कु	कू	कृ	के	कै	कोः	कौः
kəh	kah	kih	kiih	kuh	kuuh	krh	keh	kəў h	koh	kəў h

Calligraphy

The visərgəh is usually added to a character after every other stroke has been made, including the head-stroke.

e.g. क को को कोः

The realisation of the visərgəh varies in different parts of India

a. It may be realised as strong aspiration following the realisation of the character with which it is written, for example

देवः	मालाः	कविः	गुरुः	कवेः	गुणैः	भानोः	गौः
devəh	malah	kəvih	guruh	kəveh	guɳəў h	bhanoh	gəў h

It is realised in this way when it occurs medially, as in दुःखम् , duhkhəm; or as the doubling of the following consonant, as in तपःसु , təpəhsu, təpəssu.

b. It may be realised in final position as h following the vowel of the character with which it is written, and a very short repetition of the same vowel after h , as illustrated by this transcription of the examples given above:

devəh^{ə} malah^{a} kəvih^{i} guruh^{u} kəveh^{e} guɳəў h^{i} bhanoh^{o} gəў h^{u}

1. 'emission of breath'

Reading examples[1]

कः ख्यः ठः झः ऐः ओः ऊः ॠः नौः षः
गुणः धृतिः बाहुः नितेः नृपैः विद्युः शृणिः पुरुषः
मनःसु हविःषु धेनुभिः विशेषतः अंशतः अतःकरणम्
समदुःखसुखः शुनःशेपः जगतोहिताः मतोऽधिकः तेजोंऽशः
बहवोंऽबुवेगाः योगमायासमावृतः गंगातरंगहिमशीकरशीतलानि
जयदेवपंडितकवेः । पंडितानां समाजेऽपंडिता मौनं भजेयुः ।

भूय एव महाबाहो शृणु मे परमं वचः ।[2]
सुखं दुःखं भवोऽभावो भयं चाभयमेव च ॥[3]
वहसि वपुषि विशदे वसनं जलदाभं हलहतिभीतिमिलितयमुनाभम् ।
केशव धृतहलधररूप जय जगदीश हरे ॥[4]
माधविकापरिमलललित नवमालतिजातिसुगंधौ ।
मुनिमनसामपि मोहनकारिणी तरुणीकारिणबंधौ ॥[5]

4. The Complete Syllabary

The complete syllabary, arranged in the traditional order, is given on the following page. The characters are further arranged in a table in which the vowel characters, and the two modifiers added to the character अ , are placed in order at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akara form, each consonant character with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers.[6] These two tables together show the order in which the characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries. Characters with the anusvarah are, however, placed before characters without the anusvarah but followed by another consonant character.

1. For transcription, see p.52.
2. Bhagavadgītā,ch.10,v.1.a.
3. ibid., ch.10,v.4.b.
4. Gītagovindakāvyam, sarga 1,v.8.
5. ibid., sarga 1.3,v.7.
6. Cf. the series of characters with vowel signs given above under 2.ii.

अ आ इ ई उ ऊ
ऋ ॠ ऌ ॡ
ए ऐ ओ औ
अं अः

क ख ग घ ङ
च छ ज झ ञ
ट ठ ड ढ ण
त थ द ध न
प फ ब भ म
य र ल व
श ष स ह
ळ

5. The Devanagari Numerals

Hindi forms:	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	१०
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Bombay forms:	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	१०
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

6. Punctuation

In prose writing, the end of a sentence is marked with a vertical stroke of the same height as the characters. In verse, the first line of a stanza or couplet is closed with one vertical stroke, and the complete stanza or couplet is closed with two vertical strokes and numbered as illustrated in the verse examples given at the end of the next chapter.

CHAPTER 3

CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants realised without any intervening vowel. A character formed by combining other characters is called a conjunct character, संयुक्ताक्षरम् (səṃyuktakṣərəm).

1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Characters may be combined in various ways, according to the form of the characters to be joined.

i. The second character may be subscribed to the first:

क् क	क्क	ङ् क	ङ्क	ट् ट	ट्ट	द् व	द्व
k- kə	kkə	ŋ- kə	ŋkə	ṭ- ṭə	ṭṭə	d- və	dvə

ii. If the first character has an upright stroke, this stroke may be omitted, and the first part of the first character is joined to the second character by the head-stroke, thus:

न् द	न्द	ग् ग	ग्ग	त् प	त्प	न् म	न्म
n- də	ndə	g- gə	ggə	t- pə	tpə	n- mə	nmə

The characters क् , झ् and फ् are usually joined with following characters in the forms क , झ and फ .

Some conjunct characters may be formed by either of these two methods, for example: च् च or च्च ज् ज or ज्ज

c- cə	ccə	j- jə	jjə

Some conjunct characters are formed by a combination of methods i. and ii.; for example: द् ध द्ध द् भ द्भ
d- dhə ddhə d-bhə dbhə

iii. If the first character is a rounded character, with no upright stroke, it is usually written in full, and the second character is joined with it in a modified form, for example:

ट् य ट्य द य द्य ह् य ह्य ह् म ह्म
ṭ- yə ṭyə d- yə dyə h- yə hyə h- mə hmə

iv. Some characters are written in a special form when joined with other characters, for example:

श् व श्व र् थ र्थ ग् र ग्र श् र श्र
ʃ- və ʃvə r- thə rthə g- rə grə ʃ- rə ʃrə

The characters क्ष (Hindi form) and क्ष (Bombay form), representing k-ṣə , and the character ज्ञ , representing j-ɲə , have been included in the syllabic series from a very early date, though no conjunct characters are included in the syllabary. Calligraphically these three characters are not formed by joining two distinct characters, but they are considered in this work under the appropriate classes of conjunct characters because they represent syllables consisting of two consonants and the vowel ə .

If any characters are not modifiable, and therefore cannot be combined, by any of these methods, the realisation of them without an intervening vowel is indicated by writing the first character with the viramə, thus ट् क ट्क ड् ढ ड्ढ द् ब्र द्ब्र
ṭ- kə ṭkə ḍ- ḍə ḍḍə d- brə dbrə

Characters combined with other characters in this way do not form conjunct characters in calligraphy, but they are included in this chapter because they complete certain series in the classes of conjunct characters.

Three, four or five characters may be combined to form a conjunct character, for example:

त् म् य	त्म्य	ब् ध् व	ब्ध्व	र् ष् ट् य	ष्ट्र्य
t - m - yə	tmyə	b - dh - və	bdhvə	r - ṣ - ṭ - yə	rṣṭyə

The general rules already given for the order of strokes in writing a character apply also to the conjunct characters. The vowel signs are added to the character before the headstroke is written.

Examples:	ktyu	क	क्त	क्त्य	क्त्यु	क्त्युं
	stvi	।	।स्त	।स्त्व	स्त्वि	स्त्विं
	rjyaṃ	ज	ज्या	ज्यां	ज्यां	ज्यां

2. Contexts of Conjunct Characters.

Conjunct characters occur in the following contexts:

i. In words, such as

इच्छा	अग्निः	क्षिप्रः	ब्रह्मन्	श्लोकः	स्त्री
iccha	agnih	kṣiprəh	brəhmən	ʃlokəh	strii

ii. In junctions arising from grammatical processes:

a. In words formed by the addition of suffixes to verbal roots, such as

भज्-त	भक्त	गम्-य	गम्य	लभ्-त्वा	लब्ध्वा
bhəj-tə	bhəktə	gəm-yə	gəmyə	ləbh-tva	ləbdhva

b. In derivatives of various kinds, such as

दिव	दैव्यम्	शूर	शौर्यम्
divə	dəỹvyəm	ʃuurə	ʃəv̆ryəm

c. In words formed by the addition of prefixes or suffixes to other words, as in

उत्-तम	उत्तम	उत्-गमः	उद्गमः	अभि-आसः	अभ्यासः
ut-təmə	uttəmə	ut-gəməh	udgəməh	əbhi-asəh	əbhyasəh
दुर्-गुण	दुर्गुण	वि-आधिः	व्याधिः	वाच्-मय	वाङ्मय
dur-guɳə	durguɳə	vi-adhih	vyadhih	vac-məyə	vaŋməyə

iii. In compound words, in which the final character of one part of the compound word, if it is a hələntə character, is joined with the initial character of the following part, as in

षट् - मासः	षण्मासः	ऋच्-वेदः	ऋग्वेदः
ʂəʈ - masəh	ʂəŋmasəh	rc - vedəh	rgvedəh

श्रीमत् भगवत् गीता	श्रीमद्भगवद्गीता
ʃriimət - bhəgəvət - giita	ʃriimədbhəgəvədgiita

iv. In pieces consisting of two or more words, in which a conjunct character is written joining the final character of one word, if it is a hələntə character, with the initial character of the following word. For example:

श्रेयो हि ज्ञानमभ्यासाज्ज्ञानाद्ध्यानं विशिष्यते
ʃreyo hi jɲanəməbhyasajjɲanaddhyanəm viʃiʂyəte,

ध्यानात्कर्मफलत्यागस्त्यागाच्छान्तिरनन्तरम् ॥ १२ ॥
dhyanatkərməphələtyagəstyagacchantirənəntərəm.12.[1]

1. Bhagavadgita, Ch.12.v.12.

The process of joining characters illustrated in ii. to v. above is known as 'sandhi' of consonants[1]. The examples in ii.a. and ii.b. illustrate the process of 'internal' sandhi, and those in ii.c., iii. and iv. illustrate that of 'external' sandhi.

3. Classification of Conjunct Characters.

The conjunct characters are arranged in this work in classes according to the combination of consonants which occurs when the conjunct character is realised in reading. The conjunct characters, when arranged in this way, fall into four classes.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

Class 2. Two vərgiiyə characters joined.

Class 3. Characters joined with əntəhsthə characters in various combinations:

i. Characters joined with य

ii. Characters joined with व

iii. Characters joined with

a. preceding र् ; or b. following र

iv. Characters joined with

a. preceding ल्[2]; or b. following ल

Class 4. vərgiiyə characters joined with uuṣmən characters:

i. Characters joined with

a. preceding श्, ष् or स् ; or b. following श, ष or स

ii. Characters joined with

a. preceding ह् ; or b. following ह

1. Compare reference to 'sandhi' of vowels, in Chapter 2, 2.i.
2. The Vedic character ळ, ḷə, is included in this class.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined[1].

क्क	क्ख	ग्ग	ग्घ	ङ्ङ	च्च	च्छ	ज्ज	ज्झ	--
-kkə	-kkhə	-ggə	-gghə	-ṅṅə[2]	-ccə	-cchə	-jjə	-jjhə	
ट्ट	ट्ठ	ड्ड	ड्ढ	ण्ण	त्त	त्थ	द्द	द्ध	न्न
-ṭṭə	-ṭṭhə	-ḍḍə	-ḍḍhə	-ṇṇə	-ttə	-tthə	-ddə	-ddhə	-nnə
प्प	प्फ	ब्ब	ब्भ	म्म					
-ppə	-pphə	-bbə	-bbhə	-mmə					
य्य		ल्ल	व्व		श्श	ष्ष	स्स		
-yyə	--	-llə	-vvə[3]		-ʃʃə	-ṣṣə	-ssə	--	

Alternative forms च्च ज्ज ज्झ ण्ण ल्ल
-ccə -jjə -jjhə -ṇṇə -llə

The characters अ , र and ह do not occur in this series. The second and fourth characters in each vərgəh are formed by combining the əlpəpraṇə characters with the corresponding məhapraṇə characters.

Reading examples[4].

ठक्कुरः कक्खट दृग्गोचरः वाग्घि तिङ्ङतिङ् उच्चैः इच्छा
रज्जुः उज्झति पट्टिका लट्ठ उड्डीन षड्ढा विषण्ण विषण्ण
उत्तम उत्थित उद्देशः बुद्धिः भिन्न पिप्पलः फुप्फूस अब्बुः
अब्भोगः सम्मतिः संमोहः शय्या उल्लेखः तच्छृणु सन्नद्ध
दुश्शील [दुःशील] शतायुष्षु [शतायुःषु] जस्सराजः शुभाँल्लोकान्

1. Conjunct characters which do not occur initially are indicated by prefixing a hyphen in the roman transcription.
2. This character occurs only in the grammatical term given in the reading examples.
3. This character occurs only in combination with preceding र् .
4. Transcription of examples is given on p.52.

Class 2. Two vərgiiyə characters joined.[1]

i. əghoṣə and ghoṣəvət characters, excluding ənunasikə characters:

vərgəh	əghoṣə				ghoṣəvət			
क - च kə - cə	क्च -kcə	-- --	क्छ -kchə	-- --	ग्ज -gjə	-- --	ग्झ -gjhə	-- --
क - ट kə - ṭə	क्ट -kṭə	ट्क -ṭkə	क्ठ -kṭhə	ट्ख -ṭkhə	ग्ड -gḍə	ड्ग -ḍgə	ग्ढ -gḍhə	ड्घ -ḍghə
क - त kə - tə	क्त -ktə	त्क -tkə	क्थ -kthə	त्ख -tkhə	ग्द -gdə	द्ग -dgə	ग्ध -gdhə	द्घ -dghə
क - प kə - pə	क्प -kpə	प्क -pkə	क्फ -kphə	प्ख -pkhə	ग्ब -gbə	ब्ग -bgə	ग्भ -gbhə	ब्घ -bghə
च - ट cə - ṭə	-- --	ट्च -ṭcə	-- --	ट्छ -ṭchə	-- --	ड्ज -ḍjə	-- --	ड्झ -ḍjhə
च - प cə - pə	-- --	प्च -pcə	-- --	प्छ -pchə	-- --	ब्ज -bjə	-- --	ब्झ -bjhə
ट - त ṭə - tə	ट्त -ṭtə[2]	त्ट -tṭə	ट्थ -ṭthə	त्ठ -tṭhə	ड्द -ḍdə	द्ड -ddə	ड्ध -ḍdhə	द्ढ -ddhə
ट - प ṭə - pə	ट्प -ṭpə	प्ट -ptə	ट्फ -ṭphə	प्ठ -pṭhə	ड्ब -ḍbə	ब्ड -bḍə	ड्भ -ḍbhə	ब्ढ -bḍhə
त् - प tə - pə	त्प -tpə	प्त -ptə	त्फ -tphə	प्थ -pthə	द्ब -dbə	ब्द -bdə	द्भ -dbhə	ब्ध -bdhə

1. Many of these conjunct characters occur only in external sandhi.
2. This combination occurs in the character combining ट्, त् and र .

ii. Characters of each vargəh joined with a preceding or following anunasikə character of the same vargəh.

a. anunasikə character preceding.

ङ्क	ङ्ख	ङ्ग	ङ्घ	ञ्च	ञ्छ	ञ्ज	ञ्झ
-ṅkə	-ṅkhə	-ṅgə	-ṅghə	-ñcə	-ñchə	-ñjə	-ñjhə
ण्ट	ण्ठ	ण्ड	ण्ढ	न्त	न्थ	न्द	न्ध
-ṇṭə	-ṇṭhə	-ṇḍə	-ṇḍhə	-ntə	-nthə	-ndə	-ndhə
म्प	म्फ	म्ब	म्भ				
-mpə	-mphə	-mbə	-mbhə				

Alternative forms ञ्झ ण्ट ण्ठ ण्ड ण्ढ

-ñjhə -ṇṭə -ṇṭhə -ṇḍə -ṇḍhə

These characters, representing a preceding homorganic nasal consonant, are usually written in preference to the anusvarəh placed on the preceding character, of which examples have been given above[1]. The following examples illustrate the contexts in which the anusvarəh may be written, and in which it is not written:

पतन्ति	विनंतिः	विनन्तिः	लभन्ते	अंते अन्ते
pətənti[2]	vinəṃtih or vinəntih[3]		ləbhənte[2]	əṃte or ənte[3]

b. anunasikə character following.

च्न	ज्ञ	ट्न	ड्न	त्न	थ्न	द्न[4]	ध्न	प्म	भ्म
-cnə	jñə	-ṭhṇə	-ḍhṇə	-tnə	-thnə	-dnə	-dhnə	-pmə	-bhmə

The character ज्ञ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and is found, from an early date, included in the syllabic series of characters[5]. In realisation, however, it belongs to this class of

1. See above, Ch.2,3.1.b. 2. Verbal forms. 3. Non-verbal forms.
4. The combination द् - न more usually becomes न्न in sandhi.
5. See above, Ch.2,1.iii.

conjunct characters. In the order of words in dictionaries, words beginning with ञ्ज are placed between words beginning with ञो and those beginning with ज्य .

iii. Characters joined with a preceding or following anunasika character of a different vargah:

a. anunasika character preceding.

ङ्	ङ्भ	न्	न्क	न्ग	न्च	न्ज	न्फ	न्भ
ṅ-	-ṅbha	n-	-nka	-nga	-nca[1]	-nja[1]	-npha	-nbha

Most characters may occur joined with preceding न् , on account of the frequent occurrence of formative particles ending in न् .

ङ् , ṇa , also may occur with many characters in external sandhi.

b. anunasika character following.

-ण्	क्ण	ग्ण	भ्ण
-ṇa	-kṇa	-gṇa	-bhṇa

-न्	क्न	ख्न	ग्न	घ्न	प्न	ब्न	भ्न
-na	kna	-khna	gna	ghna	-pna	-bna	-bhna

-म्	क्म	ख्म	ग्म	घ्म	च्म	ज्म	ड्म
-ma	-kma	-khma	-gma	-ghma	-cma	-jma	-ḍma

त्म	द्म	ध्म
-tma	-dma	-dhma

iv. Two anunasika characters of different vargah.

ङ्न	ङ्म	ण्न	ण्म	न्म	म्ण	म्न
-ṅna	-ṅma	-ṇna	-ṇma	-nma	-mṇa	mna

Alternative forms of the conjunct characters in iii. and iv. are formed with ण , e.g. ग्ण -gṇa भ्ण -bhṇa म्ण -mṇa ण्म -ṇma .

1. It is more usual to write ञ् before characters of the ca-vargah.

Reading examples[1]

i. वाक्चल वाक्छलम् पृथग्जनः वाग्झटिति वाक्टीका षट्कोण षट्खेटकम् वाग्डम्बरः खड्गः -वाग्ढौकते- -द्विड्घोरा- भक्तिः उत्कट उक्थम् उत्खात हृद्गत सद्गुण दग्ध उद्घाटकः वाक्पटु वाक्फलम् -ककुप्खालु- पृथग्भावः ककुब्गुरुः ककुब्घोरा षट्चरणः षट्छविः षड्जः -षड्झटिति- अप्चरः ककुप्छविः कुब्ज -ककुब्झटिति- षड्देवाः षड्धा षट्पटि टुप्टीका षट्फण षड्बाहु ककुप्ठक्कुरः अब्डिम्भ षड्भाग ककुब्ढौकते उत्पन्न सत्फलः गुप्त उद्बोधक उद्भवः शब्दः लब्ध भगवद्गीता संयुक्त अद्भुत मद्भक्त बुद्धियुक्त सच्छब्दः

ii.a. अङ्कः शङ्खः लिङ्गम् सङ्घः सञ्चयः वाञ्छा अञ्जीरः झञ्झा घुण्टः कण्ठः पण्डितः ढुण्ढिः अन्तः पन्थक सुन्दर इन्धः कम्पन गुम्फति सम्बन्धः आरम्भः पङ्क्तिः अरुन्द्धा

b. याञ्चा ज्ञानम् हेद्धाति हेद्धाति रत्नम् मथ्ना बुध्नाति पाप्मन् तज्ज्ञेय सञ्ज्ञा संज्ञा विशेषज्ञ जिज्ञासु

iii.a. उदङ्भिः महान्कविः दृन्फूः दृन्भूः

b. ऋक्ण रुग्ण गृभ्णाति शक्नोति चख्नुतुः अग्निः विघ्न मृड्नाति आप्नोति अब्नाभः रुक्मिणी वाग्मिन् वच्मिः अज्मः कुड्मल आत्मन् पद्मा ध्मात दृभ्मस् दध्मौ

iv. दिङ्नागः वाङ्मय द्विण्नालः[2] षण्मासः जन्मन् रम्णाति म्नात

---

1. For transcription of examples, see p.52. Examples illustrating characters which could occur in sandhi arising from the sequence of words in a sentence are placed between hyphens.
2. The first character represents dvi . See Class 3.ii.

Class 3. Characters joined with antahstha characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

क्य	ख्य	ग्य	घ्य	ङ्य	च्य	छ्य	ज्य	झ्य	--
kya	khya	gya	ghya	-ṅya	cya	-chya	jya	-jhya	--
ट्य	ठ्य	ड्य	ढ्य	ण्य	त्य	थ्य	द्य	ध्य	न्य
-ṭya	-ṭhya	-ḍya	-ḍhya	ṇya	tya	thya	dya	dhya	nya
प्य	फ्य	ब्य	भ्य	म्य					
pya	-phya	bya	bhya	mya					

य्य	र्य	ल्य	व्य	श्य	ष्य	स्य	ह्य
(yya)[1]	-rya[2]	lya	vya	śya	-ṣya	sya	hya

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. and 2. with 3.i.

न्य	त्य	त्म्य	प्त्य	ग्ध्य	द्भ्य	ब्ज्य
-nnya	-ttya	-tmya	-ptya	-gdhya	-dbhya	-bjya

Reading examples.[3]

वाक्यम् ख्यात वैराग्यम् श्लाघ्य[4] उदङ्यशः च्युत वाञ्छ्य ज्योतिस् उज्झ्यति कापट्यम् शाठ्यम् जाड्यम् अवाढ्य पुण्यम् त्याज्य पथ्य विद्या ध्यानम् कन्या आप्य रिफ्यते अब्योनिः अभ्यासः सौम्यम् धैर्यम् अमूल्य व्यूढ दृश्य मनुष्यः रहस्य ह्रस् सैन्यस्य सन्यासः संन्यासः चिन्त्य बुद्ध्या तज्ज्योतिस् वैदग्ध्यम् माहात्म्यम् भक्त्या कौब्ज्यम् सुहृद्भ्यः भगवन्व्यक्तिः --एवमेतद्यथाऽऽत्थ-- --गुह्यमध्यात्मसंज्ञितम्-- । अङ्गः सुखमाराध्यः सुखतरमाराध्यते विशेषज्ञः ।[5]

---

1. See under Class 1. 2. The superscribed stroke in this character represents r preceding another consonant. 3. For transcription see p.53. 4. The first character represents ʃla . See below under iv.b. 5. NItiśatakam, verse 3.a.

ii. Characters with following व .

क्व	ख्व	ग्व	घ्व	ङ्व	च्व	छ्व	ज्व	झ्व	
kvə	khvə	gvə	ghvə	-ṅvə	-cvə	-chvə	jvə	jhvə	--
ट्व	ठ्व	ड्व	ढ्व	ण्व	त्व	थ्व	द्व	ध्व	न्व
-ṭvə	-ṭhvə	-ḍvə	-ḍhvə	-ṇvə	tvə	-thvə	dvə	dhvə	nvə
प्व	--	ब्व	भ्व	म्व					
-pvə	--	-bvə	-bhvə	-mvə					
य्व	र्व	ल्व		झ्व	ष्व	स्व	ह्व		
yvə	-rvə[1]	lvə	(-vvə)[2]	ʃvə[3]	ṣvə	svə	hvə		

ञ and फ do not occur in this series. व preceding another character occurs in ण्व , -vṇə, न्व , -vnə , व्र , vrə[4] and ळ्व , vlə[5].

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. and 2. with 3.i. and ii.

त्त्व	र्व्व	च्छ्व	त्त्व	द्व्य	ब्ध्व	ग्ध्व
-ttvə	-rvvə	-cchvə	-ktvə	-dvyə	-bdhvə	-gdhyə

Reading examples.[6]

क्वचित् पक्वान्नम् आरण्वोः ऋग्वेदः लध्वी उच्छ्वासः उज्ज्वल उज्भ्व लट्वः यद्वत्वा षड्विध द्दढ्वम् शृण्वन् त्वरित पृथ्वी उद्विग्न ध्वनिः अन्वित आप्वा अब्वाहनम् रिम्वन् चम्वोः प्यागुली सर्व सर्व्व नल्वः ईश्वरः विश्व ष्वक्कते अनुस्वारः ह्वे विह्वल विध्वंसः द्वन्द्वः तत्त्वम् दुग्ध्वा लब्ध्वा उक्त्वा दाव्ना एतद्ध्वा व्लिनाति ग्राण्णा[7] प्राङ्वशः[7] त्यक्त्वाऽऽत्मशुद्धये । ---पुण्यकृताँल्लोकानुषित्वा शाश्वतीः समाः ।[8]

---

1. For the superscribed stroke in this character, see below, in iii.a.
2. See -vvə in Class 1.
3. For this form of ʃə see Ch.2,1.iii.
4. See below, under iii.b.
5. See below, under iv.b.
6. For transcription of examples, see p.53.
7. The initial characters in these words represent grə and prə .
8. From Bhagavadgītā, Ch.6,v.41.a.

iii. Characters joined with preceding र् or following र .

a. र् preceding another character.

To represent र् preceding another character a stroke is superscribed on the character before which r is to be realised. This stroke is called रेफः, rephəh, the name given to the character र .[1] rephəh in this form may be written with any character, but it does not occur with ञ or स .

र्क	र्च	र्ट	र्त	र्प	र्य	र्श	र्ह
-rkə	-rcə	-rʈə	-rtə	-rpə	-ryə	-rʃə	-rhə

Some of the characters, particularly ग , च , ज , त , द , ध , ब , म , य and व , are frequently doubled when written with rephəh. This practice is found in Hindi writing, but is not usual in Marathi writing. Examples:

र्ग्ग	र्ज्ज	र्त्त	र्द्ध	र्म्म	र्य्य	र्व्व
-rggə	-rjjə	-rttə	-rddhə	-rmmə	-ryyə	-rvvə

Characters written with vowel signs and rephəh:

र्का	र्कि	र्की	र्कु	र्के	र्कै	र्को	र्कौ
-rka	-rki	-rkii	-rku	-rke	-rkəў	-rko	-rkəў

and with rephəh and ənusvarəh:

र्कां	र्किं	र्कीं	र्कुं	र्कें	र्कैं	र्कौं
-rkaṃ	-rkiṃ	-rkiiṃ	-rkuṃ	-rkeṃ	-rkəўṃ	-rkəўṃ

The rephəh is placed above the upright stroke of a character, or above the mid-point. It is always written to the right side of any other superscribed stroke, as shown in the examples given below. It is written also with the vowel character ॠ. as in the word निर्ऋतिः.

---

1. rephə, 'rough'; rephəh, 'a rough sound'.

Characters with repheh are written as shown in these examples:

rki	र्क	र्कि	र्की	र्कीं	rkii	र्का	र्की	र्कीं	र्कीं
rke	र्क	र्के	र्कें	र्कैं	rko	र्का	र्को	र्कों	र्कों
rkiṃ	र्किं	र्किं	र्किं	र्किं	rkəvṃ	र्कौं	र्कौं	र्कौं	र्कौं

In Bombay writing the character representing -rhə is sometimes written as ⸗ह , though the use of this stroke for repheh is more rarely used in writing Sanskrit than in writing Marathi.

b. र following another character.

To represent र following another character, a diagonal stroke is placed against the upright stroke of those characters that have one, or beneath the mid-point of the lower part of a rounded character.

क्र	--	ग्र	घ्र	ङ्र	--	च्छ्र	ज्र	--	--
krə	--	grə	-ghrə	-ŋrə	--	-chrə[2]	jrə	--	--
ट्र	--	ड्र	--	--	त्र	थ्र	द्र	ध्र	न्र
-ṭrə[3]	--	-ḍrə	--	--	trə	thrə	drə	dhrə	-nrə
प्र	--	ब्र	भ्र	म्र	व्र	श्र	स्र	ह्र or ह्ल	
prə	--	brə	bhrə	mrə	vrə	ʃrə[4]	srə	hrə	

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. to 3.ii. with 3.iii.

क्त्र	त्प्र	र्त्य	द्र्य	र्ध्व	र्द्र	न्त्र्य	र्ध्न्य
-ktrə	-tprə	-rtyə	-dryə	-rdhvə	-rdrə	-ntryə	-rdhnyə

1. See above, Ch.2,2.ii. Vowel signs.
2. This combination occurs in the character joining च्छ् and र .
3. ट् and र are combined in the character representing ष् , ट् and र .
4. For this form of श , see Ch.2,1.iii.

Reading examples[1]

a. तर्कः मूर्ख वर्गः वर्गीय दीर्घ शार्ङ्ग चर्चा मूर्च्छित अर्जुनः निर्झरः दार्ढ्यम् वर्णः कर्तृ व्यर्थ दुर्दैवम् अर्ध मनुर्नाम अर्पणम् दुर्बल गर्भित ऊर्मिः कर्म्मन् धार्मिक पर्यन्त पर्यत सूर्य्यः दुर्लभ पूर्व सर्व्व दर्शनम् हर्षः अर्हत् कीर्तिः अहर्निशम् ऊर्ध्वम् वर्ज्य मूर्ध्नि मूर्ध्न्यधायात्मनः नैर्ऋती दुर्बुद्धैर्युद्ध । श्वेतैर्हयैर्युक्ते । वेदयज्ञाध्यायनैर्न दानैर्न च ---

b. विक्रमः आग्रहः शीघ्र प्राङ्नारी कृच्छ्र वज्रम् पौंड्रः शत्रुः द्रव्यम् श्रुव प्रयत्नः प्रेम्णा ब्रुव भ्रातृ नम्र व्रजः शुश्रूषा स्रज्वा ह्रस्व ह्रस्व ह्रै हिंस्र श्राद्ध आर्द्र आर्द्र दारिद्र्यम् दारिद्र्यम् संह्रीण एतच्छ्रुत्वा विग्व्रतम् षट्विंश यत्प्रमाणम् जम्ब्वाम्रले

iv. Characters combined with preceding ल् or following ल .[2]

a. ल् preceding another character.[3]

ल्क	ल्ग	ल्प	ल्फ	ल्ब	ल्भ	ल्म
-lkə	-lgə	-lpə	-lphə	-lbə	-lbhə	-lmə
ल्श	ल्स	ल्ह		Vedic ळ्ह		
-lʃə	-lsə	-lhə		-ɭhə		

b. ल following another character.

क्ल	ग्ल	छ्ल	ड्ल	प्ल	ब्ल	भ्ल
klə	glə	-chlə	-ɖlə	plə	blə	bhlə
म्ल	व्ल	श्ल or ष्ल	ह्ल			
mlə	vlə	ʃlə	hlə			

Most of these characters may be written either by method i. or by method ii., described earlier in this chapter.[4]

1. For transcription, see p.53.
2. For ल joined with antehatho characters, see i. to iii. above.
3. Vedic ळ is included in this class.
4. See above, 1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. to 3.iii. with 3.iv.

त्प्ल	त्क्ल	च्छ्ल	ल्भ्य
-tplə	-tklə	-cchlə	-lbhyə

Reading examples.[1]

उल्का फल्गु स्वल्प अल्पप्राण गुल्फित उल्ब प्रगल्भ

हल्शब्दः हल्सन्धिः वल्ह् प्रागल्भ्यम् जळ्हु मिळ्हुषे

क्लेशः ग्लौ प्लुव पिप्लुः अब्लिंग ककुभ्लाभः म्लेच्छः ब्लिनाति

श्लोकः श्लेषः सिह्लः ह्लादते उच्छ्लथ उत्क्लेशः उत्प्लव

परेषां चेतांसि प्रतिदिवसमाराध्य बहु हा

प्रसादं किं नेतुं विशसि हृदय क्लेशकलिलम् ।

प्रसन्ने त्वय्यन्तः स्वयमुदितचिन्तामणिगुणे

विमुक्तः सङ्कल्पः किमभिलषितं पुष्यति न ते ॥६२॥[2]

Class 4. vargiiyə characters joined with preceding or following uusmən characters.

i. Characters joined with श , ष or स .

a. श् , ष् or स् preceding another character.

The following characters occur in this series, some occurring only in external sandhi.

श्[3] ʃ-	श्क	श्च	श्छ	श्न	श्प	श्म
	-ʃkə	-ʃcə	-ʃchə	ʃnə	-ʃpə	ʃmə
ष् ʂ-	ष्क	ष्ट	ष्ठ	ष्ण	ष्प	ष्फ	ष्म
	-ʂkə	-ʂṭə	ʂthə	-ʂṇə	-ʂpə	-ʂphə	-ʂmə
स् s-	स्क	स्ख	स्ज	स्त	स्थ	स्न	स्प	स्फ	स्म
	skə	skhə	-sjə	stə	sthə	snə	spə	sphə	smə

1. For transcription, see p.54. 2. Vairāgyaśatakam, v.62.
3. These characters may be written with either श् or श्.

b. श , ष or स following another character.

The following characters occur in this series, some occurring only in external sandhi.

श ʃə	क्श -kʃə	ङ्श -ŋʃə	ञ्श -ɲʃə	ट्श -tʃə	न्श -nʃə	प्श -pʃə
ष ʂə	क्ष or क्ष [1] -kʂə	ङ्ष [2] -ŋʂə	ट्ष -tʂə	न्ष -nʂə	प्ष -pʂə	
स sə	क्स -ksə	ट्स -tsə	त्स -tsə	न्स -nsə	प्स -psə	

The character क्ष has been included in the syllabic series from an early date, and is not calligraphically a conjunct character.[3] In the order of words in dictionaries, words beginning with क्ष are placed after words beginning with क .

Conjunct characters of Classes 1. - 3. with Class 4.

स्त्र strə	ष्ट्र -ʂtrə	ष्ट्व -ʂtvə	क्ष्ण kʂɳə	क्ष्म -kʂmə	स्त्व -stvə	त्स्थ -tsthə	त्स्न -tsnə
स्त्र्य strɣə	त्स्म्य -tsmyə	ष्ट्र्य -rʂtyə	त्स्न्य -rtsnyə				

Calligraphy: kʂə , Bombay form - क्ष क्ष क्ष क्ष

Reading examples[4]

a. आश्चर्यम् प्रश्नः श्मश्रु पुष्कल ब्रूष्कम् सृष्टिः कृष्ण ज्येष्ठ घृत पुष्पम् निष्फल ऊष्मन् श्लेष्मा संस्कृत स्खलित भ्रस्ज् स्तब्ध स्थितिः स्त्री अन्तःस्थ स्निग्ध स्पृष्ट स्फूर्तिः भस्म श्रेष्ठत्वम् श्च्युत दृष्ट्वा दंष्ट्रा वार्ष्णेय नमस्तेऽस्तु

b. प्राक्शिरस् प्रत्यङ्शिरस् ताञ्शुका [तान्शुका] षट्शास्त्र रप्शते अक्षरम् अक्षरम् तिर्यङ्षु षट्षष्टिः क्षेत्रज्ञ विक्सम लिट्सु वत्सः सुगण्सरति [सुगण्ट्सरति] क्ष्मा

1. Bombay form. 2. This combination usually becomes ङ्क्ष .
3. Cf.note on ज्ञ , C1.2.ii.b. 4. For transcription, see p.54.

श्लक्ष्ण उत्क्षिप्त भक्ष्य मत्स्यः तत्स्थल क्वेत अप्कृत्स्न कात्स्न्यम्
विभ्रष्टश्छन्न कर्मफलप्रेप्सुर्लब्धः नभःस्पृशम् धार्ष्ट्यम् एतत्क्षेत्रम्

ii. ənunasikə characters joined with preceding ह् or following ह .

a. ह् preceding ण , न and म . ह्ण ह्न ह्म
-hṇə hnə -hmə

b. ह following ङ् and न् . ङ्ह न्ह
-ṅhə -nhə

Reading examples.[1]

गृह्णाति वह्निः हुते ब्राह्मण प्राङ्हस्तः [प्राङ्स्तः] हृष्टान्भान्हि

अग्निमीळे पुरोहितं यज्ञस्य देवमृत्विजम् । होतारं रत्नधातमम् ॥१॥[2]
अग्निः पूर्वाभर्ऋषिभिरीड्यो नूतनैरुत । स देवाँ एह वक्षति ॥२॥[3]

तत्रापश्यत्स्थितान्पार्थः पितॄनथ पितामहान् ।
आचार्यान्मातुलान्भ्रान्तॄपुत्रान्पौत्रान्सखिंस्तथ ॥२६॥[4]

सक्ताः कर्मण्यविद्वांसो यथा कुर्वन्ति भारत ।
कुर्याद्विद्वांस्तथाऽसक्तश्चिकीर्षुर्लोकसंग्रहम् ॥२५॥[5]

नैव किंचित्करोमीति युक्तो मन्येत तत्त्ववित् ।
पश्यन्शृण्वन्स्पृशन्जिघ्रन्नश्नन्गच्छन्स्वपन्श्वसन् ॥८॥[6]

आज्ञाकीर्तिः पालनं ब्राह्मणानां दानं भोगो मित्रसंरक्षणं च ।
येषामेते षड्गुणा न प्रवृत्ताः कोऽर्थस्तेषां पार्थिवोपाश्रयेण ॥४८॥[7]

---

1. For transcription, see p.54.
2. Rigveda, 1.
3. ibid., 2.
4. Bhagavadgītā, ch.1,v.26.
5. ibid., ch.3,v.25.
6. ibid., ch.5,v.8.
7. Nītiśatakam, v.48.

Transcription of Reading Examples

Chapter 2.

1.i. də dhə tə phə mə pə nə cə ɖə gə
kə bhə jə bə ghə chə thə khə jhə ɲə

bhəʈə pəɖə dhənə kəɖə məʈhə phəɳə ghənə khəc dədh dəmə
chəd jhəgə jəɖə phəʈə pəthə bətə chəgə pəɖh ghəʈə gəɳə

gəməkə jəgət cəɳəkə məthənə ghəʈəkə pəʈhəkə dəməthə
dhəʈəkə kəpəʈə bhəjəkə gəɳəkə kəthəm khəjəkə pədəkə

chədənəm pəɳənəm nəʈənəm kəthənəm bhəɳənəm jənəpədə
gəmənəm pəʈhənəm dhənəmədə jhəɳəjhəɳəm jhəɳəjhəɳəm

1.ii. və yə rə lə bə thə khə tə

ləvə jələ khərə vəd jhərə bələ vərə rəɳə vəʈh
ləbh yəvə dhərə ləyə jhərə rəʈ rəɳə phəl rəthə

tərələ ləvəɳə bhəyəm dhəvələ jəʈhərə cərəɳə ɖəmərə
nəkhərə ləgəɖə cəpələ bhəvət nəyənə vəcərə ləʈəbhə

yəməvət vəyənəm gərələm pədəkəmələ kəpəʈəvəcənəm

1.iii. ʂə hə sə ʃə pə ɖə rə khə

ʃərə səhə səʈ vəʃə həs jhəʂə rəsə vəʂ ʃəvə
səʈ ʃəthə kəʃə kəʂə ʃəs həyə hərə jhəʂə bhəʂə

sərələ kələʃə jəhət vəyəs ʃəpəthə səməyə bəhələ ʃələbhə
yəʃəs ʃərəʈə səphələ sərəsə hərəkə pərəʃə rəbhəsə həʈəkə

dəʃərəthə ʃəkəʈəm səvəyəs kələhəm ʃəsənəm ʃəʈəʃəs
jələcərəs nəvədəʃəkəm səhəgəməɳəm kəmələvədənə dəʃəʃətəm

2.i. ə i u ɵ r ii uu o əў l a əv̆ rr

əthə iʂ ut ekə inə ot əd əўʃə rdh
uuh ədhə iiʃə uchə əv̆m rɳə uudhə ihə uʂ
əd əl əv̆m okh rc əўɳə udəɳ rɳəm
iiʂət uuhənəm rʂəbhə əv̆ʂədhəm əўʂəməs upəkərəɳəm

2.ii. nii bhuu gəў ər da ji gəv̆ pəў me ɖuu
kr chi nəv̆ həў bhii ʃrr ʃii dr hi hr

ɖuurə bhiitə ramə corə tiɳ doʂə ʃrtə dhrtə ruudhə
gəўrə krʃ pəv̆lə klp drdhə purə phəɳə məv̆lə krrt
pitr meru ɖuuʂi bhiiti hrdi guru vrtha ʃiʃu setu
otu iiti etəv̆ rtu iti uuru rʂi eɳii iiʅe

3374

bhuuṣitə viʃeṣə upayə vəỹbhəvə pitrrn pəvruṣə rucirə bhəvmikə
kumarii jhəṭiti ṭhalinii ruuṣitə əvṣədhi kəỹkeyii jhirika
vidhatru əỹhikə ḍhalin surəbhi khəḍika heḷətə

ekakin hrṣikeʃə itihasə kəvʃəleyə viṣuucika pəvraṇikə
devənagərii ənunasikə əvpəniṣədə upəjiivika əvpədeʃikə
upəniveʃikə əvpənayikə ko-pi rte-pi yəʃo-pəyəʃə

3.i. kiṃ maṃ sukhəṃ hərimṃ mrtəṃ tənuṃ əhəṃ evəṃ rṣiinaṃ
ḍimbə paṃḍu ləỹṃgəm ḍhuṃḍhi jrṃbh jhəṃjha kiṃcit kəvṃteyə
səṃyəmənə səṃvət maṃsə ʃəmyu səṃruuḍhə səṃliinə əṃhəti

taməhəṃ hrdi səṃgətaməniʃəṃ bhrʃəṃ rəməyami
kiṃ vəne-nusərami tamihə kiṃ vrtha viləpami

3.ii. kəh chəh ṭhəh jhəh əỹh oh uuh rh nəvh ṣəh
guṇəh dhrtih bahuh niteh nrpəỹh viduh ʃrṇih puruṣəh
mənəhsu hivihṣu dhenubhih viʃeṣətəh əṃʃətəh əṃtəhkərəṇəm
səməduhkhəsukhəh ʃunəhʃepəh jəgətohitah məto-dhikəh tejoṃ-ʃəh
bəhəvoṃ-buvegəh yogəmayasəmavrtəh gəṃgatərəṃgəhimaʃiikərəʃiitəlani
jəyədevəpəṃḍitəkəveh pəṇḍitanaṃ səmaje-pəṃḍita məvnəṃ bhəjeyuh

bhuyə evə məhabaho ʃrṇu me pərəməṃ vəcəh

sukhəṃ duhkhəṃ bhəvo-bhavo bhəyəṃ cabhəyəmevə cə

vəhəsi vəpuṣi viʃəde vəsənəṃ jələdabhəṃ hələhətibhiitimilitəyəmunabhəm
keʃəvə dhrtəhələdhərəruupə jəyə jəgədiiʃə hərə

madhəvikapərimələlələlitə nəvəmaləti jatisugəṃdhəv
munimənəsaməpi mohənəkariṇii tərunṇiikariṇəbəṃdhəv

Chapter 3.

Class 1.

ṭhəkkurəh kəkkhəṭə drggocərəh vagghi tiṇṇətiṇ uccəỹh iccha
rəjjuh ujjhəti pəṭṭika ləṭṭhə uḍḍinə ṣəḍḍha viṣəṇṇə viṣəṇṇə
uttəmə utthitə uddeʃəh buddhih bhinnə pippələh phupphuusəh əbbuh
əbbhogəh səmmətih səṃmohəh ʃəyya ullekhəh təcchrṇu sənnəddhə
duʃʃiilə (duhʃiilə) ʃətayuṣṣu (ʃətayuhʃu) jəssərajəh ʃubhaṃllokan

Class 2.

i. vakcələ vakchələm prthəgjənəh vagjhəṭiti vakṭiika ṣəṭkoṇə
ṣəṭkheṭəkəm vagḍəmbərəh khəḍgəh vagḍhəvkəte dviḍghora bhəktih utkəṭə
ukthəm utkhatə hrdgətə səḍguṇə dəgdhə udghaṭəkə vakpəṭu
vakphələm kəkupkhalu prthəgbhavəh kəkubguruh kəkubghora ṣəṭcərəṇəh
ṣəṭchəvih ṣəḍjəh ṣəḍjhəṭiti əpcərəh kəkupchəvih kubjə kəkubjhəṭiti
ṣəḍdevah ṣəḍdha ṣəṭpəti ṭupṭiika ṣəṭphəṇə ṣəḍbahu kəkupṭhəkkurəh
əbḍimbhə ṣəḍbhagə kəkubḍhəvkəte utpənnə sətphələh guptə udbodhəkə udbhəvəh

ʃəbdəh ləbdhə bhəgəvədgiita səṃyuktə ədbhutə mədbhəktə buddhi-yuktə səcchəbdəh

ii.a. əŋkəh ʃəŋkhəh liŋgəm səŋghəh səɲcəyəh vaɲcha əɲjiirəh jhəɲjha
ghunṭəh kəɳṭhəh pəɳḍitəh ḍhuɳḍhih əntəh pənthəkə sundərə indhəh
kəmpənə gumphəti səmbəndhəh arəmbhəh pəŋktih ərunddha

b. yacɲa jɲanəm heṭhɳati heḍhɳati rətnəm məthna budhnati papmən
təjɲeyə səɲjɲa səmjɲa viʃeṣəjɲə jijɲasu

iii.a. udəŋbhih məhankəvih drunphuh drunbhuh

b. rkɳə rugɳə grbhɳati ʃəknoti cəkhnutuh agnih vighnə
mrḍɳati apnoti əbnabhəh rukmiɳii vagmin vəcmih əjməh kuḍmələ
atmən pədma dhmatə drbhməs dədhməv̆

iv. diŋnagəh vaŋməyə dviɳnaləh ṣəɳmasəh jənmən rəmɳati mnatə

Class 3.

i. vəkyəm khyatə vəy̆ragyəm ʃlaghyə udəŋyəʃəh cyutə vaɲchyə jyotis
ujjhyəti kapəṭyəm ʃaṭhyəm jaḍyəm əvaḍhyə puɳyəm tyajyə
pəthyə vidya dhyanəm kənya apyə riphyəte əbyonih əbhyasəh
səv̆myəm dhəy̆ryəm əmuulyə vyuuḍhə drʃyə mənuṣyəh rəhəsyə hyəs
səy̆nyəsyə
sənnyasəh səmɳyasəh cintyə buddhya təjjyotis vəy̆dəgdhyəm mahatmyəm
bhəktya kəv̆bjyəm səhrdbhyəh bhəgəvənvyəktih evəmetədyətha--tthə
guhyəmədhyatməsəmjɲitəm əjɲəh sukhəmaradhyəh sukhətərəmaradhyəte
viʃeṣəjɲəh

ii. kvəcit pəkkvannəm akhvoh rgvedəh ləghvii ucchvasəh ujjvələ ujjhvə
ləṭvəh yədnətva ṣəḍvidhə drḍhvəm ʃrɳvən tvəritə prthvii udvignə
dhvənih
ənvitə apva əbvahənəm ribhvən cəmvoh yvagulii sərvə sərvvə nəlvəh
iiʃvərəh viʃvə ṣvəkkəte ənusvarəh hve vihvələ vidhvəmṣəh dvəndvəh
təttvəm
dugdhva ləbdhva uktva davna etəddhva vlinati gravɳa praŋvəʃəh
tyəktva--tməʃuddhye puɳyəkrtamɻlokanuṣitva ʃaʃvətiih səmah

iii.a. tərkəh muurkhə vərgəh vərgiiyə ḍiirghə ʃarŋgə cərca muurchitə
arjunəh nirjhərəh
dardḥyəm vərɳəh kərtr vyərthə durdəy̆vəm ərdhə mənurnamə ərpəɳəm dur-
bələ gərbhitə
uurmih kərmmən dharmikə pəryəntə pəryəmtə suuryəh durləbhə puurvə
sərvvə dərʃənəm
hərṣəh ərhət kiirtih əhərniʃəm uurdhvəm vərjyə muurdhni muurdhnya-
dhayatmənəh nəy̆rrtii
durbuddhəy̆ryuddhə ʃvetəy̆rhəyəy̆ryukte vedəyəjɲadhyayənəy̆rnə
danəy̆rnə cə

b. vikrəməh agrəhəh ʃiighrə praŋratrii krcchrə vəjrəm pəv̆ɳḍrəh
ʃətruh drəvyəm
dhruvə prəyətnəh premɳa bruvə bhratr nəmrə vrəjəh ʃuʃruuṣa srəjva
hrəsvə hrəsvə
hrəy̆ himṣrə ʃraddhə ardrə ardrə daridryəm daridryəm səmhriiɳə
etəcchrutva
digvrətəm ṣəṭtrimʃə yətprəmaɳəm jəmbvamrəle

iv. ulka phəlgu svəlpə əlpəpraɳə gulphitə ulbə prəgəlbhə
həlʃəbdəh həlsəndhih vəlh pragəlbhyəm jəl̪hu mil̪huṣe
kleʃəh gləv̆ pləvə pipluh əbliŋgə kəkubhlabhəh mlecchəh vlinati
ʃlokəh ʃleṣəh sihləh hladəte ucchləkhə utkleʃəh utpləvə

pəreṣaɱ cetaɱsi prətidivəsəmaradhyə bəhu ha
prəsadəɱ kiɱ netuɱ viʃəsi hrdəyə kleʃəkəliləm
prəsənne tvəyyəntəh svəyəmudit̪ecintaməɳiguɳe
vimuktəh səŋkəlpəh kimə bhileṣitəɱ puṣyəti nə te

Class 4.

i.a. aʃcəryəm prəʃnəh ʃməʃru puṣkələ bleṣkəm srṣṭih krṣɳə
jyeṣṭhə ṣṭhyuutə
puṣpəm niṣphələ uuṣmən ʃleṣma səɱskrtə skhəlitə bhrəsj stəbdhə
sthitih strii
əntəhsthə snigdhə sprṣṭə sphuurtih bhəsmə ʃreṣṭhətvəm ʃcyutə drṣṭva
dəɱṣṭra varṣɳeyə nəmoste-stu

b. prakʃirəs prətyəɳʃirəs taɳʃuka tanʃuka ṣəṭʃastrə rəpʃəte əkṣərəm
tiryəɳṣu ṣəṭṣəṣṭih kṣetrəj̃ɲə diksəmə liṭsu vətsəh sugəɳsərəti
sugəɳṭsərəti kṣma
ʃləkṣɳə utkṣiptə bhəkṣyə mətsyəh tətsthələ kṣvetə əpkrtsnə kartsnyəm
vibhrəṣṭəʃchənnə kərməphələprepsurləbdhəh nəbhəhsprʃəm dharṣṭyəm
etətkṣetrəm

ii. grhɳati vəhnih hnute brahməɳə praɲhəstəh praɲghəstəh iṣṭanbhanhi

əgnimiil̪e purohitəɱ yəj̃ɲəsyə devəmrtvijəɱ / hotarəɱ rətnədhatəməm
əgnih puurvobhərrṣibhiriidyo nuutənəv̆rutə / sə devaɱ ehə vəkṣəti

tətrapəʃyətsthitanparthəh pitrrnəthə pitaməhan
acaryanmatulanbhrantrrputranpəv̆transəkhiɱstəthə

səktah kərməɳyəvidvaɱso yətha kurvənti bharətə
kuryadvidvaɱstətha-səktəʃcikiirṣurlokəsəŋgrəhəm

nəv̆və kiɱcitkəromiiti yukto mənyetə təttvəvit
pəʃyənʃrɳvənsprʃənjighrənnəʃnəngəcchənsvəpənʃvəsən

ajɲakiirtih palənəɱ brahmaɳaɱ danəɱ bhogo mitrəsəɱrəkṣəɳəm cə
yeṣamete ṣədguɳa nə prəvrttah korthəsteṣaɱ parthivopaʃrəyeɳə

HINDI SECTION

C H A P T E R 1

ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Devanagari Script is used in writing Hindi (हिन्दी) and the arrangement of the characters in the syllabary is the same as the Sanskrit arrangement.[1] Some of the characters are used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords, but most of them may be found in literary texts. Some of the characters are modified for representing sounds occurring in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

The script is usually referred to as बालबोध (bələbodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. Each character is called अक्षर (əkṣər), and the syllabic series is called वर्णमाला (vərṇəmala, 'character-series'). The terms used by Hindi grammarians to refer to the script are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in Hindi differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters realised with the vowel ə , these terms are used in this section in the Hindi form, and are transcribed in accordance with the realisation of the characters in Hindi. The following examples illustrate the difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding terms used in this section: Sanskrit अक्षरम् (əkṣərəm), Hindi अक्षर (əkṣər)
विरामः (viraməh), विराम (virам)
अन्तःस्थ (ənтəhsthə), अन्तस्थ (ənтəsth)

The table given below in this chapter shows the arrangement of the Hindi syllabary in roman notation. The sounds occurring in Arabic

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

and Persian loanwords, and the intervocalic realisation of the characters realised initially as ɖə and ɖhə , are represented in the roman notation as follows:

q , for the voiceless uvular plosive, क़

x , for the voiceless velar fricative, ख़

ɣ , for the voiced velar fricative, ग़

z , for the voiced dental fricative, ज़

f , for the voiceless labial fricative, फ़

ɽ , ɽh , for the retroflex flapped consonants ड़ and ढ़

Nasalisation of vowels is shown by the superscript ~ .

As the Devanagari system of writing is syllabic, and the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the vowel ə , the roman table shows each consonant with this vowel. This vowel, when realised with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent' vowel[1].

The series of vowels includes 'short' i and 'long' ii , 'short' u and 'long' uu . These pairs of vowels occur in Hindi words, some words being always written with the 'short' vowel and others with the 'long' vowel. There are certain pairs of words which are distinguished in meaning by the writing of the 'short' or the 'long' vowel, and other words in which the 'short' or the 'long' vowel is written, but no distinction is made in speech. In transcribing examples, these vowels are written as 'short' or 'long' in accordance with Hindi orthography, and not in relation to 'length' of spoken vowel sounds.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

Hindi Syllabary in Roman Notation

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro-flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə [1]	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə [2]	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə [2]	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) [3]	(ɲə) [3]	ɳə [4]	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və [5]
Fricatives	Voiceless		xə [6]	ʃə	ʂə [4]	sə	fə [6]
	Voiced		ɣə [6]			zə [6]	
Aspirate			hə				

VOWELS	ə a	i ii	u uu	e əy̆	o əv̆	r [7]
MODIFIERS	Nasal - ɱ and ~		Aspirated - h '			

Notes on the syllables marked 1 - 7 in the above table:

1. The character representing the syllable kə is modified to represent the uvular plosive, qə .
2. The characters representing these two syllables are modified to represent the medial and final realisation of these characters

as flapped sounds, written as ɽ and ɽh in the transcription.

3. The characters representing ŋə and ɲə are not written as single characters in Hindi, but only in combination with other characters, illustrated below in Chapter 3.
4. The two characters representing ɳə and ʂə occur only in Sanskrit loanwords, and do not occur initially.
5. The character represented by və is usually realised with labio-dental articulation; or, initially, as a bilabial plosive.
6. These syllables are written by modifying other characters which represent sounds somewhat similar in articulation:
   xə with the character for khə ; fə with the character for phə;
   ɣə with the character for gə ; zə with the character for jə
7. This vowel, syllabic r , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords.

CHAPTER 2

CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the Devanagari Script used in writing Hindi are those given in the Sanskrit section, with the terms which are used by Hindi grammarians in referring to them and to the sounds which they represent. The method of writing the characters is that described in the Introduction, and in the notes on the calligraphy of special characters as they are given in the tables.

The characters, and the realisation of them in reading Hindi, are discussed in this chapter under the same headings as in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers[1].

1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vargiiy' characters, 'antasth' characters, and 'uuṣm' characters[2]. The consonant characters, as they are given in the syllabary, are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel ə . Characters realised in this way are described as अकार (əkar). The realisation of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated in the script by writing a diagonal stroke, known as the

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1. for the use of this term.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2. References are given throughout this chapter to the divisions and sub-divisions with the corresponding numbers in Chapter 2. of the Sanskrit section.

विराम (viram)[1] at the foot of the character thus, क् , k- , त् , t- .

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in reading Hindi differs in some respects from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later, when the characters are discussed in detail.

a. A final əkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.[2]

b. A final əkar character formed by combining two or more consonant characters[3], or a final əkar consonant character preceded by a character written with the ənusvar representing a nasal consonant[4], is usually realised with an ə-glide.

c. A medial əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain contexts, as, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a word of three or more characters and the following character is written with one of the vowel signs[5]. Other contexts are given later, when the characters are discussed in detail.

d. When an əkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before the addition of formative particles consisting of a consonant character with a vowel sign.

In the transcription of examples of Hindi words, final əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide,

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1. 2. əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, as described below in notes a. - d., are, however, not written with the viram, which is used mainly in writing certain Sanskrit loanwords.
3. See below, Ch.3.
4. See below, 3.i.ənusvar.
5. See below, 2.ii.

are transcribed without ə , and medial əkar characters realised in this way are written thus, k' , t' , p' , for guidance in reading. Characters which do not occur in an initial position are indicated by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

i. Characters of the vargiiy group.

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters realised as syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel ə . These characters are placed in five classes, or वर्ग (vərg), according to the position of articulation of the consonant in the syllable they represent. The characters are given in the Sanskrit section.[1] Of these characters, ङ , ŋə and ञ , ɲə , do not occur in Hindi words, and occur in Sanskrit loanwords only in combination with other characters.[2] The character ण , ɳə , occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords in literary Hindi. The characters given as 'Bombay' forms are also used in Hindi writing, but less frequently than those given in the tables. Some of the characters are modified to represent certain sounds in Persian and Arabic loanwords and the intervocalic realisation of ड and ढ .

क़	ख़	ग़	ज़	फ़	ड़	ढ़
qə	xə	yə	zə	fə	-ɽə	-ɽhə

The characters ड and ढ occur only initially; ड़ and ढ़ are never initial, but may be medial or final.

Reading examples.[3]

1. One character words, realised as a consonant with the vowel ə .

छ ढ त ठ न

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i. 2. See below, Ch.3.
3. For transcription, see page 85.

2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

कब धन भट चढ़ घन ठब छत चख झट घट
फण थन जड़ ख़म गज़ ग़म क़द डग क़फ़ मठ

3. Three character words

मगन झगड़ फबन खड़क क़दम थमक ग़ज़ब पढ़त
भजन चणक पकड़ घटक कथन छमक ख़तम ज़ख़म

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

धमकत बचपन पतझड़ जमघट फटकन झटपट

ii. Characters of the əntəəth group.

There are four characters in this group, representing syllables consisting of an initial semi-vowel with the vowel ə . The characters are given in the Sanskrit section[1].

When the characters य , yə and व , və , occur initially, or with one of the vowel signs, they are realised as consonants followed by ə vowel. When they occur medially in a position in which they are realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially in positions in which an əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming a diphthong with the vowel of the preceding syllable.

Examples: यमन वक मय लव
yəmən vək bhəy ləv

The character व is often realised initially or medially as bə .

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.

Reading examples.[1]

1. One character word.[2] व

2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

कर	जल	वर	फल	लड़	घर	वन	तर	खल	छय
धर	नव	जर	छल	वय	बल	लव	जय	यम	भर

3. Three character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

बदल	चलन	गरज	चपल	वज़न	क़बर	लयन	वरुण
ग़रज़	तरफ़	यमल	वचन	यवन	ख़बर	यमक	ग़ज़ल

4. Four and five character words; second characters in four character words and third character in five character words, realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

मतलब	लमछड़	चढ़कर	करवट	ढलकन	कटफल
चमरख़	खरखट	परजवट	पकड़कर	मचलपन	

iii. Characters of the uuṣm group.

This group consists of three characters which are realised as fricative consonants followed by the vowel ə , and one which is realised as an aspirate followed by ə . These characters are given in the Sanskrit section[3]. The character ष , ʂə , occurs only in some Sanskrit loanwords used in literary Hindi. It is often realised in ordinary speech as ʃə . The last character in the Hindi syllabary is ह , hə .

---

1. For transcription, see p.85.
2. This is the only entosth character which occurs as a word.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

In words consisting of əkar consonant characters only, the realisation of ह , hə , varies according to its position in the word.

a. When ह occurs medially preceded by an əkar character, and is followed by another consonant character, it is often realised in combination with the vowel ə of the preceding character as aspiration accompanying the vowel (æ), as in

शहर	पहर	रहन	लहसन
ʃəhər(ʃæhr)	pəhər(pæhr)	rəhən(ræhn)	ləhəsən(læhsən)

b. When ह occurs as a final character following an əkar consonant character it is generally realised in combination with the vowel of the preceding character as (a). Examples:

तरह	जगह	Exceptions:	यह	वह	सह
tərəh(tərə)	jəgəh(jəgə)		yəh(yeh)	vəh(voh)	səhə

Reading examples.[1]

1. None of the uuṣm characters occurs as a word.

2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

दस	हर	शठ	बस	हल	कश	हम	सब	हठ
हक़	धस	यश	रस	हड़	षट्	हद	ग़श	सर

3. Three character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

शपथ	समझ	शरण	हसद	सरस	शबर	सफ़र
हज़म	सगढ़	समय	हलफ़	शकल	कलश	तरस

4. Four character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel, second characters with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide.

मसनद	कसरत	हज़रत	सरकश	ख़सलत
हटकन	हरकत	हलचल	मसरफ़	सरदल

1. For transcription, see p.85.

2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.

i. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Hindi are the same as those given in the Sanskrit section[1], omitting the characters representing syllabic rr and syllabic l and ll . The character ॠ occurs in Sanskrit loanwords used in literary Hindi. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the syllabary, and they are referred to as əkar, akar, ikar and so on. The Bombay forms of the characters are sometimes written in Hindi, but the forms given in the table are more usual.

The general rules concerning the realisation of əkar consonant characters should be applied in reading all examples given below, unless special notes are added.

Reading examples.[2]

1. Words consisting of vowel characters only.

आ आई आओ आए आओ आई आए

2. Words consisting of vowel characters and əkar consonant characters.

अब एक ऊठ और उन इन ओढ़ ऊख आग ईख
ओझ ऋण ऋण इस ईद ऐश ओर गई गए सई
इधर ऊपर ऐज़न औषध अगर ओझर औरत ऐपन

ii. Vowel Signs.

The vowel signs used in writing Hindi, corresponding with the vowel characters and written with the əkar form of the character क , are given in the Sanskrit section.[3] Each character represents a

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.i.
2. For transcription, see p.85.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.ii.

syllable consisting of a consonant followed by one of the vowels a to əv̆ . The vowel signs are referred to as मात्रा (matra), as in ए की मात्रा (e kii matra , 'the sign of e ').

Reading examples.[1]

1. One character words.

भी सौ का दे पै जी ले या जो ख्वा वे
के पी धो जा नौ दो जू है से सो थी

2. Two character words.

दूध भात चीज़ बैठ खुल मौज छेद दृढ[2] झील
होय नाव दिन गाय झूट उषा ऋतु हुई धोए
लिए शुरू पैसा धोबी ख़ाना भीति कृपा बड़ी जाए

3. Three character words.

मैदान हुज़ूर क़िताब कारण फ़क़ीर तैयार दीजिए
पृथिवी रूपैये केऊर सुअर देखाओ सुनाई बहुधा

4. Words of four or more characters. Numbers in brackets indicate the realisation of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, if the words are not to be read according to the rules given above. Most words of more than four characters are compounds in which the final character of the first part, if əkar, is realised with zero-vowel.

मज़दूर कमज़ोर अफ़सोस नज़दिक दरवाज़ा घड़ियाल
बेइनामी इसीलिए चतुराई बैलगाड़ी सौदागर रोज़गारी
बनावटी [3] मुसलमान [3] ख़बरदार [3] ख़िदमतगार [2,4]

---

1. For transcription of examples, see p.85.
2. A Sanskrit loanword, with final ḍhə .

The following rules concerning the realisation of əkar consonant characters in words which have vowel characters and signs provide some guidance for reading from the script, though the only reliable guide is a knowledge of the spoken language.

a. When a medial əkar consonant character, in a three character word, is followed by a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, e.g.

रेशमी	अपना	लड़का	लकड़ा	परदा	सदरी
reʃ'mii	əp'na	ləṛ'ka	ləkʻṛa	pər'da	səd'rii

b. i. When a verbal base ends in an əkar consonant character, this character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before formative particles which consist of a consonant character with a vowel sign e.g.

सक	सकना	सकती	बोल	बोलता	बोलते
sək-	sək-na	sək-tii	bol	bol-ta	bol-te

ii. When a verbal base consists of three or more characters, the final and pre-final characters being əkar consonant characters, the realisation of these characters varies according to the form of the formative particles which are added. This variation is illustrated in the following examples:

समझ	समझा	समझता	समझकर	समझाना
səməjh	səm'jha	səməjh-ta	səməjh-kər	səm'jhana

c. Medial ह , hə , हि , hi and हु , hu are realised as follows:

i. Medial ह , preceded by a consonant character with a vowel sign is realised as aspiration of the vowel of the preceding syllable.

e.g.	चाहना	मिहनत	तुहमत	बेहतर	सोहबत
	cahna	mihnət	tuhmət	behtər	sohbət

ii. Medial हि , preceded by an əkar character, may be realised in coalescence with the vowel of a preceding əkar character as əy̆h.

e.g. पहिला बहिरा बहिन

pəhila or pəy̆hla bəhira or bəy̆hra bəhin or bəy̆hn

iii. Medial हु , preceded by an əkar character, may be realised in coalescence with the vowel of a preceding əkar character as əv̆h.

e.g. बहुत पहुड़ना

bəhut or bəv̆ht pəhuṛ-na or pəv̆hṛ-na

Reading examples, illustrating the above notes, and notes a. and b. under 1.iii (uuṣm characters).[1]

a. खिड़की दूसरा इतना आदमी कपड़ा लोमड़ी बावली फायदा

b. देखना बैठती लिखता पकड़ाना घबराती पकड़ना ढलकना

c. तेरह चौदह सुबह बग़ैरह गहिरा पहचान ठहरना कचहरी

3. Modifiers.

The modifiers, अनुस्वार (ənusvar) and विसर्ग (visərg) are both used in writing Hindi. These are given in the Sanskrit section.[2]

i. ənusvar.

Both forms of this modifier are used in Hindi, the first form, as in अं , being called the ənusvar, and the second form, as in अँ , the cəndrəbindu[3]. The ənusvar is usually written, in preference to the cəndrəbindu, with characters that have any superscribed stroke.

अँ	आँ	इँ	ईँ	उँ	ऊँ	एँ	ऐं	ओं	औं
əm̐	am̐	im̐	iim̐	um̐	uum̐	em̐	əy̆m̐	om̐	əv̆m̐

1. For transcription of examples, see p.86.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i. and ii. 3. 'moon and dot'.

The ənusvar and cəndrəbindu are realised in Hindi as follows:

a. As the nasalisation of the vowel of the character with which it is written. The cəndrəbindu is preferred for representing a nasalised vowel, except when the character has a superscribed stroke; e.g.

हां or हाँ	मुंह or मुँह	थीं	में	हैं
hã	mũh	thĩi	mẽ	hɛ̃ỹ

Reading examples.[1]

मैं जों हुँ मेंह नहीं गएँ ऊँट पाँच गाँव गईं
ओंस ईंट जाऊँ कुएं दोनों वहां आँखें चूँस भैंस
अँध भोंक भौंकना देशों दौंरी पोंछना भाईओं एँडुआ
आऊँगा जाएँगे सोंह लहंगा मंहगा हँसना पहुँचना

b. As the nasal consonant of one of the vərg. The ənusvar written on a character preceding a vərgiiy character is realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the following character, or as n when the following character is of the cə-vərg. The cəndrəbindu is not usually written to represent a nasal consonant. When the ənusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final əkar character, the final character is realised with an ə-glide[2].

पंख	कंठ	परंतु	हिंदी	संबंध	कंजूस
pəŋkh	kəɳṭh	pərəntu	hindii	səmbəndh	kənjuus

In writing Sanskrit loanwords, there is an alternative and more frequently used method of representing nasal consonants in this context, by combining characters[2]. When the ənusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final əkar character, the final character is realised with an ə-glide[3].

1. For transcription, see p.86. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 2.ii.
3. See above, 1. note b.

In some words, this modifier may be realised as in a. or as in b. The realisation as in b. is more usual when the character with the ənusvar is əkar. e.g. अँक रँग

ə̃k or əŋk rə̃g or rəŋg

Reading Examples.[1]

पंडित आरंभ संगत ठंड अंजीर पसंद बंधन संघट
कंपना पंजाब जंगल बंडी सिंग डिंब अंदर अंगुल
शंख संघ पंचमी स्वंभा अंत कुटुंब मनोरंजक

c. When the ənusvar is written on a character preceding one of the əntəsth or uuṣm characters, as in Sanskrit loanwords and learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways. Among the several ways of realising the ənusvar in this context used by speakers in different parts of India[2], the usual Hindi practice is illustrated by the following examples:

ənusvar before य , र , ल , श , स and ह , realised as n , or as the nasalisation of the vowel of the syllable, e.g.

संयोग	संरग	संलग्न[3]	संशय	अहिंसा	सिंह
sənyog	sənrag	sənləgn	sənʃəy	əhinsa	sinhə
or sə̃yog	sə̃rag	sə̃ləgən	sə̃ʃəy	əhĩsa	sĩhə

ənusvar before व , realised as m , the character व being usually realised as b in this context, e.g.

संवाद	वारंवार		कुंवारी
səmvad (səmbad)	varəmvar (barəmbar)	but	kũvarii

1. For transcription, see p.86. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i.note c.
3. The last character in this word represents ग् combined with न.

ii. visərg.

This modifier is rarely used in writing Hindi. It occurs in some Sanskrit loanwords used mainly in the literary language, and in a few Hindi words. When written with a medial character, it is usually realised either as strong aspiration after the syllable represented by the character with which it is written, as in reading learned words from a literary text; or, in less formal reading, as the doubling of the consonant of the following character; for example:

दुःख , duhkhə or dukkh अंतःकरण , əntəhkərəɳ or əntəkkərəɳ

When the visərg is written with a final character, it is realised as strong aspiration following the final syllable, for instance, in learned words such as पुनः , punəh, विशेषतः , viʃeṣ'təh ; or it may be disregarded, as in छः , chə .

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The arrangement of the characters of the Hindi syllabary in the traditional order is similar to that given in the Sanskrit section, omitting the vowel characters ऋ , ऌ and ॡ .[1] The table in which all the vowel characters, except ऋ , and the modifiers added to the character अ are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant in the əkar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Hindi the बारहखड़ी , barəh-khəɽii, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,4.

These two tables show the order in which the characters are placed as the initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit. Words beginning with the modified characters are placed in the series of words beginning with the corresponding unmodified characters.

5. Numerals.

The numerals used in Hindi are given in the Sanskrit section.[1] Both the 'Hindi' forms and the 'Bombay' forms are used in modern Hindi printing.

6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the end of a sentence is marked with an upright stroke of the same height as the upright stroke of a character. Other punctuation marks are used as in English. This system is illustrated in the Hindi prose passage at the end of this section[2]. The system of punctuation used in verse is the same as that used in Sanskrit[3].

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,5. 2. See end of Ch.3.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii. Reading examples.

CHAPTER 3

CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Two or more consonant characters may be combined in writing Hindi to represent consonants which are realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed by combining other characters are called संयुक्ताक्षर (səṇyuktakʂər[1]) by Hindi grammarians. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters are described in the Sanskrit section[2]. The conjunct characters used in writing Hindi are classified in this chapter in the same way as the Sanskrit conjunct characters[3].

1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Hindi.

Conjunct characters occur in Hindi in these contexts:

i. In Hindi words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from other languages; e.g.

बच्चा	क्योंकि	मक्खी
bəcca	kyõki	məkkhii

ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words commonly used in Hindi, or learned loanwords used in the literary language; e.g.

पुस्तक	स्त्री	शब्द
pustək	strii	ʃəbd

iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

दरख़्त	हफ़्ता	स्टेशन
dərəxt	həfta	sʈeʃən

---

1. 'joined character'. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1. 3. ibid. Ch.3,3.

2. Realisation of conjunct characters in Hindi.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an əkar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an ə-glide, as in गुप्त , gupt', शास्त्र , ʃastr'.[1]

The realisation in modern Hindi of əkar characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words[2] gives rise to a problem of spelling. For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final əkar consonant character, the final character of the base is usually realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other instances, where an əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an əkar consonant character, and the second part begins with a consonant character.[3]

3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Hindi.[4]

All the classes of conjunct characters given in the Sanskrit section occur in Hindi, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters are used. Those used in writing Hindi are illustrated by the examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords which are commonly used in Hindi. More rarely used loanwords, some of which may occur in literary Hindi, are included among the examples given with each class in the Sanskrit section.

---

1. In the transcription of examples, this glide is not indicated in words to which this rule applies. 2. See above, Ch.2,1. notes a. to d. 3. Examples of such words are given below, with each class of conjunct characters. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section[1]. Most of the consonant characters of the Hindi syllabary occur in this class, but some occur only in Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language. The character representing -rrə is written as र्र , the superscribed stroke representing र् when preceding another consonant[2]. The modified characters ड़ and ढ़ do not occur in this class, but क़्क़, qqə , फ़्फ़ , ffə , and ज़्ज़ , zzə are written in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not written in Sanskrit as the first part of a conjunct character in this class, but in writing Hindi the characters ख्ख , khkhə and ठ्ठ , ṭhṭhə are sometimes used. The combination -mmə may be alternatively represented by writing an ənusvar with the character preceding म , as in उम्मीद or उंमीद , ummid .

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which two consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

सन्न	बनना	ग़ुस्से	उससे
sənn	bən-na[3]	ɣusse	us-se[4]

Reading examples[5].

पक्का हुक़्क़ा मक्खन लग्गी घुग्घू बच्ची इच्छा
लज्जा इज़्ज़त झज्झर पट्टा चिट्ठी अड्डा बुड्ढा पत्ता
पत्थर बद्दल शुद्ध अन्न छप्पर फुप्फूस डिब्बी
भब्भड़ किम्मत रय्यत हर्रा किल्ली नव्वे हिस्सा

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,Class.1.
2. See below, Class 3.iii.a.
3. Verbal form.
4. Pronoun with suffix.
5. For transcription, see p.86.

Class 2. Two vərgiiy characters joined.

The conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section[1]. Some of the more common conjunct characters of this class occurring in Hindi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are given below, with the addition of some conjunct characters occurring in Persian and Arabic loanwords. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may be found in Hindi texts, in learned loanwords in the literary language.

i.[2]

क्त	त्क	ग्द	द्ग	प्त	त्प	ब्द	द्ब
-ktə	-tkə	-gdə	-dgə	-ptə	-tpə	-bdə	-dbə

ख़्त	ब्ज	ब्ज़	क़्त	क़्ब	क़्फ़	फ़्त	ब्त
-xtə	-bjə	-bzə	-qtə	-qbə	-qfə	-ftə	-btə

ii. Most of the characters given under ii.a. in the Sanskrit section are written in literary Hindi, this method of representing a homorganic nasal consonant preceding one of the vərgiiy characters being generally preferred to the use of the ənusvar, in writing Sanskrit loanwords[3]. Among the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b., only ज्ञ , jɲə and त्न , -tnə , occur in Hindi. The character ज्ञ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the syllabic series. It is usually realised as gyə , with nasalisation of the following vowel[4]. In Hindi dictionaries, words beginning with this character are placed after words beginning with ज्ञौ .

iii. These characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

क्म	ग्न	घ्न	त्म	द्म	प्न
-kmə	-gnə	-ghnə	-tmə	-dmə	-pnə

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 2. 2. The numbers i. - iv. correspond to the arrangement of these characters in the Sanskrit section.
3. See above, Ch.2, i.b. 4. Cf. gyə , in Class 3.i. below.

iv. Of the characters in this group, only ङ्म , -ŋmə and न्म , -nmə occur in Hindi, in Sanskrit loanwords.

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

शक्ति	सकती	रबत	दबता	पद्मा	आदमी
ʃəkti	sək-tii[1]	rəbt	dəb-ta[1]	pədma	ad'mii

Reading examples.[2]

भक्ति वक़्त सत्कार दरख़्त सद्गुण वक़्फ़ एक्बीस
कुब्ज सब्ज़ गुप्त उत्पन्न हफ़्ता शब्द लफ़्ज़ लत्फ़
लिङ्ग सङ्घ पञ्चमी मञ्झा घण्टा ठण्ड शान्ति लम्पट
आरम्भ परन्तु उपरान्त ज्ञान जिज्ञासु रत्न सम्बन्ध
रुक्मिणी हुक़्म आत्मा ख़त्म लग्न उम्दा
जन्म वाङ्मय

Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters.

i. Characters joined with following य .

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section.[3] Most of the consonant characters of the Hindi syllabary can be combined with following य , though some of these conjunct characters occur only in Sanskrit loanwords in the literary language. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may occur in a Hindi literary text. Of the modified characters, ख़ and ज़ occur combined with following य in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

---

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.86.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.b.

Reading Examples.[1]

क्यों मुख्य ख़्याल ग्यारह ज्यों ज़्यादा ड्योढ़ी पुण्य
त्यों पथ्य उद्योग मध्य न्याय प्यारी ब्यथा सभ्य
कार्य्य अमूल्य व्याख्यान अवश्य मनुष्य स्याल व्यथा

ii. Characters joined with following व .

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section.[2] Only a few of the characters of the Hindi syllabary occur combined with following व , and those that occur are mainly in Sanskrit loanwords. Of the modified characters, only ख is combined with व .

Reading examples.[3]

पक्वान्न ख़्वाब ग्वार ज्वार तत्त्व द्वारा ध्वनि विश्व
स्वामी सर्व सर्व्व ईश्वर क्वारा क्वचित् श्वास स्वप्न

iii. Characters joined with preceding र् or with following र .

a. र् preceding.

Characters realised with preceding r , represented by the stroke called रेफ़ (ref), are illustrated, with notes on calligraphy, in the Sanskrit section.[4] These characters occur in Hindi words, in Sanskrit loanwords, and in loanwords from other languages. The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Hindi. The characters ग , ज , त , ब , म , य and व are often doubled when written with ref .

---

1. For transcription, see p.86. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,Class 3.ii.
3. For transcription, see p.86. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,Class 3.iii.a.

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

कर्ता	करता	सर्व	दरवाज़ा	धर्म	दरमाहा
kərta	kər-ta[1]	sərv	dər'vaza	dhərm	dər'maha

A few words may be written either with र् followed by a consonant character or with a character with superscribed ref ; e.g.

दरबार	दर्बार	परदा	पर्दा	दरजी	दर्जी
dər'bar	dərbar	pər'da	pərda	dər'jii	dərjii

b. र् following.

Characters realised with r following, represented by a short stroke placed either against the upright stroke of the character or beneath the character, are given in the Sanskrit section.[2] The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Hindi. The majority of such words are loanwords from Sanskrit and English.

Reading examples.[3]

तर्क फ़र्क़ मूर्ख सुर्ख़ वर्ग्ग दीर्घ मुर्ग़ी ख़र्च मूर्छित
अर्ज़ अर्ज कोर्ट गार्ड वर्णमाला कीर्ति अर्थ उर्दू अर्द्ध ऊर्फ़
अर्पण अर्ब गर्भ धर्म्म आर्य्य सर्व्व दर्शन वर्ष कुर्सी अर्हित
क्रम क्रम ग्राम अंग्रेज़ ट्राम रात्री पत्र छिद्र समुद्र
प्रिय फ़्राक नम्र अब्रु श्रम तीव्र मन्त्र

iv. Characters joined with preceding ल् or with following ल .

a. ल् preceding.

The characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in that section.[4] The characters occurring in Hindi are illustrated by

1. Verbal form. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.iii.b.
3. For transcription, see p.86. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.iv.a.

the examples given below. Some words may be written either with ल followed by a consonant character, or with a conjunct character of this class; e.g. बिलकुल or बिल्कुल , bilkul.

b. ल following.

The characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in that section.[1] The examples given below illustrate the characters which occur in Hindi, in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

Reading examples.[2]

बल्कि मुल्क फाल्गुण इल्तिज़ा इल्मी कुल्हाड़ा इल्ज़ाम उल्था
अक्ल (अक़्ल) फ़स्ल (फ़सल) इख़्लास वस्ल शुक्ल क्लास उल्मुख

Class 4. vargiiy characters joined with preceding or following uuṣm characters.

i. श , ष or स preceding or following vargiiy characters.

a. श् , ष् or स् preceding.

The conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section.[3] Those which are written in Hindi, including those occurring in Sanskrit and other loanwords, are indicated by the examples given below. The following conjunct characters which are not included in the Sanskrit section occur in Hindi, in loanwords from other languages:

श्क	श्त	स्ट	स्ब
-ʃkə	-ʃtə	-stə	-sbə

Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first character being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.4.3,Cl.3.iv.b. 2. For transcription, see p.87.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.4.3,Cl.4.i.a.

as conjunct characters are illustrated by these examples:

रस्ता	बसता	क़िस्मत	उसमें
rəsta	bəs-ta[1]	qismət	us-mẽ[2]

b. श , ष or स following.

The conjunct characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section[3]. Only a few of these characters occur in Hindi. The characters which occur are illustrated by the reading examples given below. Some additional characters of this class, not included in the Sanskrit series, occur in loanwords from other languages: ख़्स , xsə , ख़्श , xʃə , फ़्स , fsə .

Reading examples.[4]

a. मुश्किल प्रश्न पश्चात् आश्चर्य चश्मा पुष्कल कृष्ण
राष्ट्र पुस्तक वास्ते वस्त्र स्त्री रास्ता हिन्दुस्थान स्नान
स्पष्ट स्फूर्ति स्वस्ति स्वस्थ उस्ताद शास्त्र पश्चिम्
किश्ती इश्तिहा निस्बत इश्क़ स्कूल स्टेशन पोस्ट

b. अच्छर अक्षर परीक्षा क्षमा लक्ष्मी वत्स प्रत्यक्ष
बख़्श शख़्स अफ़्सोस

ii. ह् preceding or following an ənunasik character[5].

Only three characters of this class occur in Hindi, illustrated by these examples:-

a. ह् preceding म , as in ब्राह्मण , brahmən .

b. ह following न् ,or म् , as in न्हान , nhan , उन्हें , unhẽ , उन्हारी unharii ; म्हारी , mharii , कुम्हड़ा , kumhəɽa , तुम्हें , tumhẽ .

---

1. Verbal form. 2. Pronoun with suffix.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.C1.4.i.b. 4. For transcription, see p.87.
5. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.C1.4.ii.a. and b.

Hindi prose passage[1]

किसी जाति के जीवन में उसके द्वारा प्रयुक्त शब्दों का अत्यंत महत्त्व-पूर्ण स्थान है। आवश्यकता तथा स्थिति के अनुसार इन प्रयुक्त शब्दों का आगम अथवा लोप तथा वाच्य, लक्ष्य एवं द्योत्य भावों में परिवर्तन होता रहता है। अतएव और सामग्री के अभाव में इन शब्दों के द्वारा किसी जाति के जीवन की भिन्न भिन्न स्थितियों का इतिहास उपस्थित किया जा सकता है। इसी आधार पर आर्य जाति का प्राचीनतम इतिहास प्रस्तुत किया गया है और ज्यों ज्यों सामग्री उपलब्ध होती जा रही है, त्यों त्यों यह इतिहास ठीक किया जा रहा है। इस अवस्था में यह बात स्पष्ट समझ में आ सकती है कि जातीय जीवन में शब्दों का स्थान कितने महत्त्व का है। जातीय साहित्य को रक्षित करने तथा उसके भविष्य को सुचारु और समुज्वल बनाने के अतिरिक्त वह किसी भाषा की सम्पन्नता या शब्द-बहुलता का सूचक और उस भाषा के साहित्य का अध्ययन करनेवालों का सब से बड़ा सहायक भी होता है। विशेषतः अन्य भाषा-भाषियों और विदेशियों के लिये तो उसका और भी अधिक उपयोग होता है। इन सब दृष्टियों से शब्द-कोश किसी भाषा के साहित्य की मूल्यवान् संपत्ति और उस भाषा के भांडार का सब से बड़ा निदर्शक होता है।

1. Hindi Shabdasāgar, p.1, ed. Shāmsundardās, pub. 1916, by Kāshi-Nāgari-Sabhā.

Transcription of Reading Examples

Chapter 2.

1.i. chə ɖhə tə ʈhə nə

kəb dhən bhəʈ cəɽh ghən ɖhəb chət cəkh jhəʈ ghəʈ
phəɳ thən jəɽ xəm gəz ɣəm qəd ɖəg kəf məʈh

məgən jhəgəɽ phəbən khəɽək qədəm dhəmək ɣəzəb pəɽhət
bhəjən cəɳək pəkəɽ ghəʈək kəthən chəmək xətəm zəxəm

dhəm'kət bəc'pən pət'jhəɽ jəm'ghəʈ phəʈ'kən jhəʈ'pəʈ

1.ii. və

kər jəl vər phəl ləɽ ghər vən tər khəl chəy
dhər nəv jər chəl vəy bəl ləv jəy yəm bhər

bədəl cələn gərəj cəpəl vəzən qəbər ləyən vərəɳ
ɣərəz tərəf yəməl vəcən yəvən xəbər yəmək ɣəzəl

mət'ləb ləm'chəɽ cəɽh'kər kər'vəʈ dəl'kən kəʈ'phəl
cəm'rəx khər'vəʈ pərəj'vəʈ pəkəɽ'kər məcəl'pən

1.iii. dəs hər ʃəʈh bəs həl kəʃ həm səb həʈh
həq dhəs yəʃ rəs həɽ ʂəʈ həd ɣəʃ sər

ʃəpəth səməjh ʃərəɳ həsəd sərəs ʃəbər səfər
həzəm səgəɽh səməy hələf ʃəkəl kələʃ tərəs

məs'nəd kəs'rət həz'rət sər'kəʃ xəs'lət
həʈ'kən hər'kət həl'cəl məs'rəf sər'dəl

2.i. a ai ao ae ao ai ae

əb ek uuʈh əv̆r un in oɽh uukh ag iikh
ojh rɳ rɳ is iid əy̆ʃ or gəii gəe səii
idhər uupər əy̆zən əv̆ʂədh əgər ojhər əv̆rət əy̆pən

2.ii. bhii səv̆ ka de pəy̆ jii le ya jo kha ve
ke pii dho ja nəv̆ do juu həy̆ se so thii

duudh bhat ciiz bəy̆ʈh khul məv̆j ched drɖh jhiil
hoy nav din gay jhuuʈ uṣa rtu huii dhoe
lie ʃuruu pəy̆sa dhobii xana bhiiti krpa bəɽii jae

məy̆dan huzùur qitab karəɳ fəqiir təy̆yar diijie
prthivii rupəy̆ye keuur suər dekhao sunaii bəhudha

məz'duur kəm'zor əf'sos məz'dik dər'vaza ghəɽiyal
beinamii isiiliye cəturaii bəỹl'gaɖii səṽdagər roz'garii
bənav'ʈii musəl'man xəbər'dar xid'mət'gar

p.13. khiɽ'kii duus'ra it'na ad'mii kəp'ɽa ləm'ɽii bav'lii phay'da
dekh-na bəỹth-tii likh-ta pək'ɽana ghəb'ratii pəkəɽ-na ɖhələk-na
terəh cəṽdəh subəh bəyerəh gəhira pəhəcan ʈhəhər-na kəcəhərii

2.i.a. mãỹ jõ hũ mẽh nəhĩi gəẽ ũuʈ pãc gãv gəĩi
õs ĩiʈ jaũu kuẽ ɖonõ vəhã ãkhẽ ghũus bhõỹs
ãdh bhõk bhãṽk-na deʃõ dõṽrii põch-na bhaiiõ ẽɖua
aũuga jaẽge sõh ləhẽga məhẽga hẽs-na pəhũc-na

b. pəɳɖit arəmbh səŋgət ʈhəɳɖ ənjiir pəsənd bəndhən səŋghəʈ
kəmp-na pənjab jəŋgəl bəɳɖii siŋg ɖimb əndər əŋgul
ʃəɳkh səŋgh pənc'mii khəmbha ənt kuʈumb mənorənjək

Chapter 3.

Class 1.

pəkka huqqa məkkhən ləggii ghugghuu bəccii iccha
ləjja izzət jhəjjhər pəʈʈa ciʈʈhii əɖɖa buɖɖha pətta
pətthər bəddəl ʃuddh ənn chəppər phupphuus ɖibbii
bhəbbhəɽ kimmət rəyyət hərra killii nəvve hissa

Class 2.

i. bhəkti vəqt sətkar dərəxt sədguɳ vəqf ekbiis
kubj səbz gupt utpənn həfta ʃəbd ləfz lətf
ii. liŋg səŋgh pəɲcəmii məɲjha ghəɳʈa ʈhəɳɖ ʃanti ləmpəʈ
arəmbh pərəntu upərant jɲan (gyan) jiɲasu rətn səmbəndh
iii. rukmiɳii huqm ətma xətm ləgn umda
iv. jənm vaɳməy

Class 3.i.

kyõ mukhy xyal gyerəh jyõ zyada ɖyəṽɖhii puɳy
tyõ pəthy udyog mədhy nyay pyarii byətha səbhy
karyy əmuuly vyakhyan əveʃy mənuṣy syal vyətha

Class 3.ii.

pəkvann xvab gvar jvar təttv dvara dhvəni viʃv
svamii sərv sərvv iiʃvər kvara kvəcit ʃvas svəpn

Class 3.iii.

s. tərk fərq muurkh surx vərgg ɖiirgh muryii xərc muurchit
ərz ərj korʈ gard vərɳəmala kiirti ərth urduu ərddh uurf
ərpəɳ ərb gərbh dhərmm aryy sərvv dərʃən vərṣ kursii ərhit

b. krəm krəm grəm əŋgrez ʈram ratrii pətr chidr səmudr
priy frak nəmr əbru ʃrəm tiivr məntr

Class 3.iv.

bəlki mulk phalgun̪ iltiza ilmii kulhaṛa ilzam ultha
əql (əqəl) fəsl (fəsəl) ixlas vəsl ʃukl klas ulmukh

Class 4.

i.a. muʃkil prəʃn pəʃcat əʃcəry cəʃma puṣkəl krṣn̪
raṣṭr pustək vəste vəstr strii rəsta hindusthan snan
spəṣṭ sphuurti svəsti svəsth ustad ʃastr pəʃcim
kiʃtii iʃtiha nisbət iʃq skuul ṣṭeʃən posṭ

b. əkṣər əkṣər pəriikṣa kṣəma ləkṣmii vətə prətyəkṣ
bəxʃ ʃəxs əfsos

Hindi prose passage

kisii jati ke jivən mẽ us'ke dvara prəyukt ʃəbdõ ka ətyənt məhəttvəpuurn̪ sthan həĭ. avəʃyək'ta tətha sthiti ke anusar in prəyukt ʃəbdõ ka agəm əth'va lop tətha vacy, ləkṣy evəm dyoty bhavõ mẽ pərivərtən hota rəh-ta həĭ. ət'evə əvr̃ saməgrii ke əbhav mẽ in ʃəbdõ ke dvara kisii jati ke jiivən kii bhinn bhinn sthitiyõ ka itihas upəsthit kiya ja sək-ta həĭ. isii adhar pər ary jati ka praciin'təm itihas prəstut kiya gəya həĭ əvr̃ jyõ jyõ saməgrii upələbdh hotii ja rəhii həĭ, tyõ tyõ yəh itihas ṭhiik kiya ja rəha həĭ. is əvəstha mẽ yəh bat spəṣṭ səməjh mẽ a sək-tii həĭ ki jatiiy jiivən mẽ ʃəbdõ ka sthan kit'na məhəttv ka həĭ. jatiiy sahity ko rəkṣit kər-ne tətha us-ke bhəviṣy ko sucaru əvr̃ samujvəl bənane ke ətirikt vəh kisii bhaṣa kii səmpənn'ta ya ʃəbd'bəhul'ta ka suucək əvr̃ us bhaṣa ke sahity ka ədhyəyən kər-nevalõ ka səb se bəṛa səhayək bhii hota həĭ. viʃeṣ'təh əny bhaṣabhaṣiyõ əvr̃ videʃiyõ ke liye to us-ka əvr̃ bhii ədhik upəyog hota həĭ. in səb drṣṭiyõ se ʃəbd-koʃ kisii bhaṣa ke sahity kii muulyəvan səmpətti əvr̃ us bhaṣa ke bhaṇḍar ka səb se bəṛa nidərʃək hota həĭ.

MARATHI SECTION

CHAPTER 1

ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Devanagari Script is used in writing Marathi (मराठी) and the arrangement of the characters in the syllabary is the same as the Sanskrit arrangement[1]. Some of the characters are used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords, but most of them may be found in literary texts.

The script is usually referred to as बालबोध (bal̪əbodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. This name is used to refer to the Devanagari script to distinguish it from the cursive script also used in writing Marathi, and known as मोडी (moḍii). Each character is called अक्षर (əkʂər) and the syllabic series is called वर्णमाला (vərṇəmala), 'character-series'. The terms used by Marathi grammarians in referring to the characters are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in Marathi differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters, these terms are used in this section in their Marathi form, and transcribed in accordance with the Marathi realisation of the characters. The difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding Marathi terms is illustrated by these examples:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	(əkʂərəm),	Marathi अक्षर	(əkʂər)
	विरामः	(viramaḥ),	विराम	(virām)
	अन्तःस्थ	(ənt̪əhst̪hə),	अन्तस्थ	(ənt̪əst̪h)

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

The table given below shows the arrangement of the Marathi syllabary in roman notation. As the system of writing is syllabic, the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the vowel ə . The roman table shows each consonant written with this vowel, which, when it is realised with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent vowel'.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro-flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə tʂə[1]	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə ʒə[1]	ɖə	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə ʒhə[1]	ɖhə	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə)[2]	(ɲə)[2]	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və[3]
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə[4]	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		

VOWELS	ə a	i ii	u uu	e əў	o əў	r[4]
MODIFIERS[5]	Nasal - ɱ , or ˜ Aspirated - h					

1. - 4. See notes on following page. 5. See Sanskrit, Chapter 1.

Notes on the syllables marked 1. - 4. in the roman table:

1. The characters representing cə , jə and jhə are realised in some words as alveolar consonants, with fricative or affricated articulation. This realisation is transcribed as t͡sə , zə and zhə , as shown in the table.
2. The characters representing ŋə and ɲə do not occur as single characters, but only in combination with other characters, and only in Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language.
3. The character representing və is usually realised with labio-dental articulation.
4. The characters representing ʂə and syllabic r occur only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The series of vowels includes 'short' i and 'long' ii, 'short' u and 'long' uu. These pairs of vowels occur in Marathi words, and the characters representing the 'short' and the 'long' vowels are written according to certain rules of orthography[1]. This distinction between the 'short' and the 'long' vowels is preserved in the transcription of the characters, though in modern Marathi speech there is often little difference between the pronunciation of words written with the characters representing the 'short' or the 'long' vowels.

The term 'modifier' is explained in the Sanskrit section. Fully nasalised vowels are rare in Marathi and the symbol m̐ is used for transcribing the mark of nasalisation only in a systematic transcription of examples for the purpose of describing the contexts in which it is realised. In words in which this mark is given zero-realisation, it is left untranscribed.

---

1. See below, end of Chapter 2.

CHAPTER 2

CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the Devanagari Script used in writing Marathi, and the realisation of them in reading, are discussed in this chapter under the same headings as the characters in the Sanskrit section:

1. Consonant Characters,
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and
3. Modifiers.

The style of the characters given in the Sanskrit section is the style generally used in Hindi printing and writing. The forms of the characters given in that section as 'Bombay' forms are used in Marathi printing and writing instead of the corresponding Hindi forms. Other differences of line and form may be seen by comparing the characters given in this section with those given in the Sanskrit section. The Hindi style is not used in Marathi printing or writing.

The method of writing the characters is in general the same as that described in the Introduction, and in the notes on the calligraphy of special characters as they are given in the Sanskrit section. When writing the characters, reference should be made to the corresponding groups of characters in that section.[1]

---

1. References are given throughout this chapter to the divisions and sub-divisions with the corresponding numbers in Chapter 2. of the Sanskrit section.

1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vərgiiy' characters, 'əntəsth' characters and 'uuṣm' characters.[1] As they are given in the syllabary, these characters are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel ə , and they are described as अकार (əkar). The realisation of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated by writing a diagonal stroke known as विराम (viram) at the foot of the character, as in Sanskrit[2], thus, क् , k- , त् , t- , प् , p- . Characters written with this stroke are described by Marathi grammarians as 'hələnt', as in Sanskrit, but in the teaching of writing in Marathi schools the writing of this stroke is called पाय मोडणें (pay moḍəṇem, 'breaking the foot'), and a character with this stroke is described as लंगडें (ləṇgəḍem, 'lame').

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in reading Marathi differs somewhat from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later when the characters are discussed in detail.

a. A final əkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.

b. A final əkar character formed by combining two or more consonant characters[3], or a final əkar consonant character preceded by a

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i - iii. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i. əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, as described below in notes a. - d. are, however, not written with the viram, which is used mainly in writing certain Sanskrit loanwords and Marathi colloquial forms. 3. See below, Ch.3.

character written with the ənusvar[1] representing a nasal consonant, is usually realised with an ə-glide.

c. A medial əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain contexts; as, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a word of three or more characters and the following character is written with one of vowel signs.[2] Other contexts are given later, when the characters are discussed in detail.

d. When an əkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before the addition of suffixes consisting of, or beginning with, a consonant character with one of the vowel signs.

In the transcription of Marathi words, final əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, are written without ə , and medial əkar consonant characters realised in this way are written thus, k', t', p', for guidance in reading. Reference to these notes should be made when reading the examples given with the characters throughout this chapter. Characters which do not occur as initial characters are indicated by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

i. Characters of the vərgiiy group.[3]

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel ə . These characters fall into five वर्ग (vərg), or classes. The characters in the table given below may be

1. See below, 2.ii.
2. See below, 2.ii. Vowel signs.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i.

compared with the Sanskrit characters, written in the Hindi style.

kə-vərg	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	kə	khə	gə	ghə	-ŋə
cə-vərg	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	cə(ʦə)	chə	jə(zə)	jhə(zhə)	-ɲə
ʈə-vərg	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	ʈə	ʈhə	ɖə	ɖhə	-ɳə
tə-vərg	त	थ	द	ध	न
	tə	thə	də	dhə	nə
pə-vərg	प	फ	ब	भ	म
	pə	phə	bə	bhə	mə

The characters ङ and ञ do not occur in Marathi words, but they are written, in combination with other characters, in some Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language.

The three characters च , ज and झ are realised in reading in two ways, according to the word in which they occur, and the vowels with which they are realised when written with one of the vowel signs.

a. The palatal realisation, च as cə , ज as jə , and झ as jhə , is made usually in reading Sanskrit loanwords, and always when these characters have the signs of the vowels i , ii or əў.

b. The alveolar realisation, च as ʦə , ज as zə , and झ as zhə , is made usually in other words, when these characters

are əkar, or when they are written with the signs of the vowels a , u , uu , o or əv̆[1].

c. When these characters are written with the sign of the vowel e , the palatal and alveolar realisations occur in an almost even distribution of words, and even may vary from time to time with changing conventions of speech.

No comprehensive rule can be given for the realisation of these three characters, however, and in the reading examples the palatal realisation should be made unless an indication of the alveolar realisation is given.

The following examples illustrate the varying realisation of əkar consonant characters in certain contexts:

a. As the second character of a four character word:

धमकट , dhəməkəʈə , realised as dhəm'kəʈ

b. In a verbal form, the realisation changing according to the formative particle or particles added:

चढ , ʧəɖhə , verbal base, realised as ʧəɖh

चढत , ʧəɖhətə , base with त added, realised as ʧəɖhət

चढतच , ʧəɖhətəʧə , base with त , and emphatic particle, च realised as ʧəɖh'təʦ .

Reading examples.[2]

1. One character words. Four of the vərgiiy characters occur as words: न ग *च ढ

---

1. See below, in this chapter, 2.ii.
2. For transcription of examples, see page 130. The alveolar realisation of cə-vərg characters is indicated by an asterisk.

2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

जग	पद	खण	बच	मन	ठग	खत	पड	धम
छत	नथ	ढग	कण	डफ	भट	*चख	*जण	*झट

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

मदत	पकड	घटक	भजन	थकत	ठणक	फबत
धमक	खडक	*चढण	*जखम	*पचत	*जपत	*झगड

4. Four character words; second characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

खटपट	धमकट	गडबड	मणगट	थबकट	खणकट
फटकन्	*चमकत	*टचकण	*दचकत	*कचकट	*झटकन्

ii. Characters of the əntəsth group.[1]

The characters of this group given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Marathi characters are:

य	र	ल	व
yə	rə	lə	və

When the characters य and व occur initially, or medially realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially in positions in which əkar consonant characters are realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming a diphthong with the vowel of the preceding syllable. Examples:

यवन	वर	भय	लव	लवकर
yəvən	vər	bhəy	ləv	ləv'kər

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.

Reading examples[1]

1. One character word. व is the only character in this group which occurs as a word.

2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

कर जल वर वन जय थर वय घर लठ लय
धर कल लठ भर दर लव *चर *चल *जर *चव

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

बदल धरण चलन गवत तनय वचन कणव स्यत
तलफ ढकल वरव *चरत *नजर *गरज *मजल *वजन

4. Four and five character words. Second character in four character words, or third character in five character words, realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

लवकर करमत परकर टरफल धनगर करवत
पलटण *कचरत पकडवत *चरबट *करमतच

iii. Characters of the uuṣm group.[2]

The characters of this group given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Marathi characters are:

श ष स and ह
ʃə ʂə sə hə

The character ष occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and when reading words in common use in Marathi, it is often realised as ʃə , except in formal reading. Final ह is usually realised with ə .

---

1. For transcription, see p.130.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

Reading examples[1]

1. None of the characters of this group occurs as a word.

2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel, or, in the last three words, with ə .

सर बस यश हट हर सण शक शव फस
हस षट् खस वश शर रस शह तह सह

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

फणस पसर शपथ सडक समय हरण सरस कलश
शहर बसव सरक दशक *हजर लहर *सहज फसल

4. Four and five character words. Second characters, or characters indicated by numbers in brackets, realised with zero-vowel or with and ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

हरकत हयगय सरवट शतपट सरपण मसलत
हनवट सरसकट (2) मसणवट (3) समजतच (3)

The last consonant character in the Marathi syllabary is ळ , -ɭə , realised as a retroflex lateral consonant with ə .[2]

Examples of words written with this character:[3]

छळ फळ खळ सरळ *जवळ हळद वळण ठवळ
पळस *चळवळ बळकट *मजजवळ (2) कळमळत (2) *जवळसर (3)

The two characters क्ष and ज्ञ are often added after ळ in the Marathi syllabary, but these characters, representing syllables consisting of two consecutive consonants with the vowel ə , do not properly belong to the syllabary, and are discussed later.[4]

---

1. For transcription, see page 130.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii, Vedic character.
3. For transcription, see page 130. əkar consonant characters realised as shown in previous examples.
4. See below, Ch.3. Conjunct Characters, Classes 2. and 4.

2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs[1].

i. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Marathi are the same as the Sanskrit characters, using the Bombay forms where these differ from the Hindi forms, and omitting syllabic rr , l and ll[2]. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the vərṇəmala. The calligraphy of the vowel characters is illustrated in the Sanskrit section.

The Marathi vowel characters are:

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
ə	a	i	ii	u	uu	e	əў	o	əў

The character ऋ , syllabic r , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords, used mainly in the literary language The vowel characters are referred to as akar , ikar , ukar , and so on.

In all reading examples which follow, əkar consonant characters which occur in words having vowel characters or vowel signs should be realised according to the general rules already given, unless special notes are added.

Reading examples[3].

1. Vowel characters only. आ ए ओ आई

2. Vowel characters with əkar consonant characters.

अड आण आठ ईद ऊठ एक ऐक ओढ औट
ऊन ऐट ईड ऊस ओळ ऐन औत ऐश ऋण
सई मऊ *जई नऊ इतर उसळ ओळख उतर उखळ
आपण *ऐवज उडत ऐरण सळई ओझर औषध ओळख

---

1. The use of vowel characters and vowel signs is explained in the Sanskrit section, Ch.2,2.i.
2. ibid. 2.2.i.
3. For transcription, see p.130.

ii. Vowel Signs.

Vowel signs corresponding to each vowel character, except अ , are added to the əkar form of consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a to əv̆ . The vowel signs are shown here added to the consonant character क . The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs, and special forms, are given in the Sanskrit section[1].

का	कि	की	कु	कू	कृ	के	कै	को	कौ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke	kəy̆	ko	kəv̆

In the teaching of writing in schools, the upright stroke of आ, ओ and औ , and of the corresponding vowel signs, as in का , को and कौ , is referred to as काना (kana). This term is also used in referring to the upright stroke in any character. The diagonal superscribed strokes in the characters ए , ओ and औ , and of the vowel signs in के , कै , को and कौ , are referred to as मात्रा (matra). The signs of the vowels इ and ई are referred to as वेलांटी (velaṇṭii), the sign in कि being डावी वेलांटी (ḍavii velaṇṭii, 'left velaṇṭii') and the sign in की being उजवी वेलांटी (uzəvii velaṇṭii, 'right velaṇṭii'). All the vowel signs are referred to as खूण (khuuṇ, plural khuṇa).

In some modern Marathi publications new forms of some of the vowel characters are being used, formed by writing the vowel signs with the character अ , thus:

अि	अी	अु	अू	अृ	अे	अै
i	ii	u	uu	r	e	əy̆

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.ii. Calligraphy.

Reading examples[1]

1. One character words.

खा ही तो ने पै धू छि भी गा घे थू हो

2. Two character words.

ठीक रूढ झील तेल *मौज दोष दृढ बैल हित दूध
काय होय नाव जेव कवि खडू शेव बहु नये बरी
डोळा पैसा कृपा धोबी शिशु छाती भीति गुरु *चौदा
बाई भाऊ ऋषि सुई एके येई ऋतु ऐके ओळी

3. Three character words.

मैदान रुमाल ठेवीन जेवून कौतुक नोकर बेडूक गरूड
कठोर जीवन *जमीन देऊळ पाऊस लढाई *तराजू *चुइटी
वगैरे *चौपाटी पाहिजे मराठी टिकाऊ बैरागी भिकारी
अितर अेक अैकिला अुतर अूठ चेअीन आअी धुअून

Realisation of medial əkar characters in words which have characters with vowel signs in various positions.[2]

a. When a medial əkar character, in a three character word, precedes a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide , and य and व form diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding characters, as in

आणखी	रेशमी	मुलगा	कायदा	बावडी
aɳ'khii	reʃ'mii	mul'ga	kay'da	bav'ɖii
शेगडी	भाकरी	छकडा	अठरा	कोयता
ʃeg'ɖii	bhak'rii	chək'ɖa	əʈh'ra	koy'ta

1. For transcription of examples see p.130.
2. Compare these notes with notes b. and c. above in this chapter.

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in words of four or more characters is illustrated in the examples given below. The realisation varies according to the position in each word of the characters with vowel signs, and a knowledge of the language is the only reliable guide to the realisation of such words.

Second character realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

शेतकरी	भानगड	वेलदोडा	सडपातळ
ʃet'kərii	bhan'gəḍ	vel'doḍa	səḍ'patəḷ

Third character realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

ताबडतोब	मोबदला	भातुकली
tabəḍ'tob	mobəd'la	bhatuk'lii

Other characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

पलिकडचा	परवानगी	समजूतदार
pəlikəḍ'ʈsa	pər'van'gii	səm'zuut'dar

b. When a suffix consisting of, or beginning with, a character with a vowel sign is added to a verbal base ending in an əkar consonant character, this final character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, as in these examples:

बस	बसत	बसतो	वाट	वाटत	वाटतात
bəs	bəsət	bəs-to	vaʈ	vaʈət	vaʈ-tat

When such suffixes are added to verbal bases of three or more characters of which the final and prefinal are əkar consonant characters, the realisation of əkar characters varies in the way illustrated by the examples given below.

Verbal base of three characters:

समज	समजा	समजत	समजतो	समजतील
səməz	səm'za	səm'zət	səməz-to	səməz-til

Verbal base of four characters, second, third and fourth əkar:

विरघळ	विरघळून	विरघळत	विरघळला
vir'ghəl̩	vir'ghəl̩uun	vir'ghəl̩ət	vir'ghəl̩-la

Reading examples[1]

1. Realisation of əkar consonant characters as in note a. above.

खिडकी कोरडा दुसरा कपडे इकडे टेकडी कुणबी
*चौकशी. कोयता गुडघे अवघा पारधी एवढा बातमी
*टरबूज केरसुणी *फौजदार झिकवण उबदार *नुकताच
स्वबरदार फसवणूक हातउसना सोडवणूक लहानपणा

2. Realisation of əkar consonant characters as in note b. above.

कळत कळतो पसरा पसरतात सरकून सरकतील
घसर घसरून घसरील घसरशील आठवून आठवतील
बिघड बिघडून बिघडलेला अडखळत अडखळतात

Realisation of characters of the cə-vərg with vowel signs.[2]

The three characters च , ज and झ , are always realised as palatal consonants when they are written with the vowel signs of i or ii , or with any vowel sign in Sanskrit loanwords. They are realised more frequently as alveolar consonants when written with other vowel signs. When written with the vowel sign of e , the alveolar or palatal realisation may vary from time to time and from district to district. The realisation of these characters as alveolar or as palatal consonants in various contexts is illustrated by the examples given below, but the only reliable guide for reading the majority of

1. For transcription, see p.131.
2. See above, note on the vərgiiy characters, in l.i.

words in which these characters occur is a knowledge of the language.

a. Palatal realisation with the vowel signs of i , ii:

चिकट	चीड	भाची	जी	भाजी	माझी
cikəṭ	ciiḍ	bhacii	jii	bhajii	majhii

b. Palatal realisation in Sanskrit and Hindi loanwords, and others, with the remaining vowel signs:

वाचन	नीच	चलन	चैन	चहा	चार	चेहरा	चूप
vacən	niic	cələn	cəÿn	cəha	car	cehərа	cuup
कचोरा	जन	मजा	उजेड	जुवा	जेवण	झेला	
kəcora	jən	məja	ujeḍ	juva	jevaṇ	jhela	

c. Alveolar realisation of these characters, əkar, or with any vowel sign except those of i , ii or əÿ :

चटणी	चार	चमचा	चूक	तिचे	चोर	चौक
ʦəṭ'ṇii	ʦar	ʦəm'ʦa	ʦuuk	tiʦe	ʦor	ʦəv̆k
जण	वजन	समज	जागा	बाजू	वाजेल	जोर
zəṇ	vəzən	səməz	zaga	bazuu	vazel	zor
झटकण	झाड	झुडूप	माझे	झोप		
zhəṭ'kəṇ	zhaḍ	zhuḍuup	mazhe	zhop		

The emphatic particle च , written as the final character of a word, is always realised as an alveolar consonant. The words चीज and झीज are realised respectively as ciiz and jhiiz

The vowel characters इ and उ ('short' vowels) and ई and ऊ ('long' vowels), and the corresponding vowel signs, are written in Marathi words according to certain rules of orthography. These rules include reference to the orthography of the modifier known as

the ənusvar[1], and are therefore given in the full statement of Marathi rules of orthography, after the modifiers have been discussed.

3. Modifiers.

Both the modifiers occurring in Sanskrit are used in writing Marathi, though the realisation of them differs from the realisation in reading Sanskrit.

i. ənusvar.[2]

The ənusvar is always written in Marathi in the form of a dot placed above a character, thus:

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	एं	ओं
əṃ	aṃ	iṃ	iiṃ	uṃ	eṃ	oṃ
कं	कां	किं	कीं	कुं	कें	कों
kəṃ	kaṃ	kiṃ	kiiṃ	kuṃ	keṃ	koṃ

The ənusvar is written to the right side of a superscribed vowel sign. The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs and the ənusvar is given in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section.

The ənusvar is realised in Marathi as follows:

a. The ənusvar, originally a mark indicating nasalisation of a vowel, is still written in many Marathi words in which the vowels are not nasalised in standard modern speech. The ənusvar in such words is disregarded in reading, though it is still written either to show the etymology of a word, to preserve a distinction of meaning in pairs of words in which one has a vowel which was originally nasalised, or to express grammatical relationships. Characters

1. See below. 3.i. 2. See Sanskrit,Ch,2.3.i.

written with the ənusvar are, however, still realised with nasalisation of the vowel in Konkani speech[1]. The following examples illustrate some of the contexts in which the ənusvar is written but not realised in reading.

Words:

तूं	तों	कीं	कांहीं	दांत	गहूं	पोंच
tuu	to	kii	kahii	dat	gəhuu	poʦ

Pairs of words:

नाव	नांव	पाच	पांच
nav[2]	nav[3]	paʦ[4]	paʦ[5]

Grammatical forms:

हें	तीं	बसतों	बोलतें	करूं
he	tii	bəs-to	bol-te	kər-uu

येतां	बागेंत	मुलानें	मुलांनीं	मुलाशीं	घरीं
ye-ta	baget	mulane	mulanii	mulaʃii	ghərii

An ənusvar placed on a final character is never realised, except in certain contexts in modern Marathi writing in which adaptations of the script are made in order to represent colloquial forms of speech, as in drama and dialogue[6].

b. In many words, including most Sanskrit loanwords, the ənusvar written on a character preceding one of the vərgiiy characters is realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the consonant represented by the following character, or as n before a character of the cə-vərg. When the ənusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final əkar consonant character,

---

1. The variety of Marathi speech known as 'Konkani standard' is spoken on the coastal strip south of Bombay, the Konkan (komkəɳ).
2. 'boat'. 3. 'name'. 4. 'emerald'. 5. 'five'.
6. See below, Marathi rules of orthography.
7. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i.note b.

the final character is realised with an ə-glide[1]. This realisation of the ənusvar is illustrated by the following examples:

रंग	उंच	अंजीर	उंट	भिंत	शिंपी	थेंब
rəŋg	unʦ	əɲjiir	uɳʈ	bhint	ʃimpii	themb

As in Sanskrit, there is an alternative method of representing nasal consonants preceding vərgiiy characters. This method is described later, in the discussion of conjunct characters[2].

When suffixes are added to plural nouns and pronouns, the ənusvar is written on the character preceding the suffix. This ənusvar is realised as n before the various forms of the suffix चा , and often realised before the suffixes ना , नीं and शीं ; e.g.

त्यांचा	त्यांची	त्यांना	त्यांनीं	त्यांशीं
tyan-ʦa[3]	tyan-cii	tyan-na	tyan-nii	tyan-ʃii

c. When the ənusvar is written on a character preceding one of the əntəsth or uuṣm characters, as in Sanskrit loanwords, mostly learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways. Among the ways of realising the ənusvar in such words, given in the Sanskrit section[4], the usual Marathi practice is illustrated by the following examples:

ənusvar before य , realised as ỹ , as in संयोग səỹyog

ənusvar before ल , realised as l̃ , as in संलग्न səl̃ləgn[5]

ənusvar before other əntəsth and uuṣm characters, realised as ṽ . e.g.

संरक्षण	किंवा	अंश	अहिंसा	मांस	सिंह
səṽrəkʂəɳ[6]	kiṽva	əṽʃ	əhiṽsa	maṽs	siṽh

1. See below, Ch.3,2. 2. ibid., 3.Class ii. 3. The first character in these words is त combined with य . See Ch.3,3.Cl.3.
4. See Sanskrit,Ch.2,3.i.note c. 5. The last character in this word is ग combined with न . See Ch.3,3.Cl.2.iii. 6. The character क्ष represents क् combined with ष . See Ch.3,3.Cl.4.i.b.

In some eighteenth century manuscripts the character व् is inserted between the character with the anusvar and a following antasth or ushm character, forming a conjunct character with it; e.g. संव्हार , sanvhar , सिंव्ह , sinvh , संव्रक्षण , sanvrakshan .

d. The anusvar is realised as nasalisation of a vowel in a few exclamations; e.g. अं , ã , ऊं , ũu ; and in the number word ऐंशी , ãĩshii.

ii. visarg.

This modifier is described in the Sanskrit section[1]. It is rarely used in writing Marathi. It occurs in a few Sanskrit loanwords, and is sometimes written with exclamations, to indicate prolongation or stress. When it is written with the final character in Sanskrit loanwords, it is realised as h followed by the vowel a , as in these words: पुनः , punha, स्वतः , svatah[2], विशेषतः , vishes'taha . When the visarg occurs medially in a word, it is realised either as the doubling of the consonant of the character which follows it, or as aspiration after the vowel of the character with which it is written; e.g. दुःख , dukkh, अंतःकरण , antahkaran . When the visarg is written after exclamations, it usually represents a prolongation of the vowel, or aspiration after the vowel, as in these words: ऊः , ũu... , or ũuh ; छेः , cheh ; वाः, vah .

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii. 2. The first character in this word is स् combined with व् . See Ch.2,3.C1.3.ii.

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The arrangement of the characters of the Marathi syllabary in the traditional order is similar to that given in the Sanskrit section,[1] omitting the vowel characters ऋ , ऌ and ॡ , and using only the 'Bombay' forms. The table in which the vowel characters (except ऋ), and the modifiers added to the character अ , are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the əkar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Marathi the बाराखडी , barakhəḍii, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

These two tables show the order in which the characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit, except that no special place is given to characters with the ənusvar. This difference in order is illustrated by the following series:

Sanskrit: a ai aṃyə aṃʃə aṃhə akə akhə ..

Marathi: a ai akə aṃkə akhə aṃkhə ... ayə aṃyə aṃʃə ..

5. Numerals.

The numerals used in Marathi are the 'Bombay' forms given in the Sanskrit section.[2]

6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the same system of punctuation is used as in English prose. The system used in Marathi verse is the same as the Sanskrit system.[3]

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,4. 2. ibid.,5. 3. ibid.,6.

Rules of Marathi Orthography.

The rules of Marathi orthography concern the writing of the vowels इ and उ (ह्रस्व , hrəsv , or 'short' vowels) and ई and ऊ (दीर्घ , diirgh , or 'long' vowels)[1]; and the writing of the ənusvar in certain words and in grammatical forms. Some of the traditional rules are being modified in modern Marathi writing, new rules having been prescribed in 1932 by the Maharashtra Literature Society (महाराष्ट्र साहित्य परिषद् , məharaṣṭrə sahityə pərişəd). Some of these rules have become widely accepted. The rules given below are stated first in terms of 'standard' orthography, followed by the modifications recommended by the Maharashtra Literature Society.

i. Rules concerning the writing of इ , ई and उ , ऊ [2].

a. The 'long' vowel characters and vowel signs are written in a final position; e.g.

बाई baii माळी maḷii भाऊ bhauu चाकू tsakuu

Exceptions: आणि aṇi, and some Sanskrit loanwords,

such as कवि kəvi गुरु guru

The vowels of the 'crude form' of nouns follow this rule regarding 'final' characters before the addition of suffixes; e.g.

मुलीला mulii-la कवीचा kəvii-tsa गुरूनें guruu-ne

Pronouns are written with the 'short' vowels: तिला tila, तुला tula

b. The 'long' vowel characters and vowel signs are written in a medial position immediately before a final ək̆ar consonant character; e.g.

ठीक ṭiik जाईल zaiil मूल muul घेऊन gheuun

1. See above, Ch.1.
2. These rules apply to the vowel signs corresponding with the vowel characters.

Exceptions: The 'short' vowels are written in some Sanskrit loanwords, e.g. हित , hit , पुरुष , puruṣ ; when they occur with the ənusvar before a final ekar consonant character, as in भिंत , bhint, उंच , unṭṣ ; or when they occur before a final conjunct character[1], as in चित्र , citr[2], मनुष्य mənuṣy[3]. The Sanskrit orthography is preserved in Sanskrit loanwords such as मूर्ख , muurkh[4], and तीव्र , tiivr[2].

c. In all other positions, or followed by any final character except an əkar consonant character, the 'short' vowels are written; e.g.

किती तिकडे तुकडा विहीर विहिरी-
kitii tik'ḍe tuk'ḍa vihiir (crude form, vihirii-)

Exceptions: Some Sanskrit loanwords,e.g. पूजा , puuja, भीति bhiiti.

ii. Rules concerning the ənusvar written in grammatical forms.[5]

a. All neuter forms, singular and plural, ending in ए , ई or ऊ , are written with the ənusvar on these final vowels; e.g.

हें तीं लुगडीं करडूं मुलें भांडें
he tii lug'ḍii kər'ḍuu mule bhaṇḍe

मोठें थोडीं पडतें झालें कलीं यावें
moṭhe thoḍii pəḍ-te zhale kelii yave

Exceptions: लोणी , loṇii and पाणी , paṇii . The word गहूं , gəhuu , is masculine plural.

In modern Marathi speech, the vowel एं , in the neuter forms of words, is often realised as ə , in informal speech. This change of spoken form is often represented by writing the ənusvar alone,

---

1. See below, Ch.3. 2.ibid. 3.Class 3.iii.b. 3.ibid. Class 3.i.
4. ibid.Class 3.iii.a. 5. The ənusvar in not usually realised in grammatical forms, except in the context given below in b.

as, for instance, in the dialogue of novels or dramas; e.g.

झालें	झालं	भांडें	भांडं	बरें	बरं
zhale	zhalə	bhaṇḍe	bhaṇḍə	bəre	bərə

b. The ənusvar is written on the character which has the vowel of the 'crude form' of words to which the suffix त[1] is added, in the singular, and before all suffixes in the plural, e.g.

घरांत	बागेंत	खोलींत	माणसांहून	मुलांनीं
ghərā-t	bage-t	kholii-t	maṇ'sā-huun	mulā-nii

The ənusvar written on the character representing the 'crude form' of words before the addition of the suffix चा is always realised as n , and often before other suffixes[2].

c. The ənusvar is written on the characters representing certain suffixes; e.g. नें , नीं , शीं , ईं and आं ; and on the final character of particles ending in आ , ई , ऊ and ए ; e.g. मागें mage, पुढें puḍhe, खालीं khalii , आतां ata . Exception: कडे kaḍe

Suffixes and particles ending in a character with the vowel sign of एं are often spoken in modern Marathi with final ə . When these forms occur in the dialogue of dramas or novels, the final character is often written with the ənusvar alone, omitting the matra, as in पुढें , puḍhe , पुढं , puḍhə , मागें , mage , मागं , magə . This use of the ənusvar to represent the forms of colloquial speech is sometimes extended to the particle कडे , and to some particles in ऊन ; e.g. कडं kəḍə , पासून , pasuun , पासनं pas'nə , तिकडून , tik'ḍuun , तिकडनं , tikəḍ'nə .

---

1. The mark of nasalisation is part of the suffix, which represents the word आंत , ãt . The initial vowel of this word coalesces with the vowel of the crude form of the noun to which it is added as a suffix. 2. See above, 3.Modifiers, i.b.

d. The ənusvar is written on certain suffixes added to verbal bases:
1st. person singular and plural:
तों -to तें -te ईं -ii एं -e ऊं -uu लों -lo लें -le
and the verbal forms आहें , ahe , आहों , aho and नाहीं nahii
2nd. person plural: तां , ta , आं , a , and लां , la
and the verbal forms आहां , aha , and नाहीं , nahii
3rd. person singular and plural: नाहीं nahii and नाहींत nahiit
and all neuter forms which change in the same way as variable adjectives.
Suffixes which are added to form verbal particles:
तां , ta , तांना, tana , ऊं , uu , and णें , ɳe (sometimes written in dialogue as णं and realised as ɳə)

e. The ənusvar is written on certain forms of the personal pronouns, when they stand in the same grammatical relationship to other words as nouns and pronouns with the addition of the suffixes नें and नीं . e.g. मीं , mii आम्हीं , amhii[1] तुम्हीं , tumhii[1], कोणीं, koɳii .

1. The character म्ह represents mhə .

Rules of Orthography of the Maharashtra Literature Society.

The modification of the rules of standard orthography recommended by the Maharashtra Literature Society are mainly concerned with the writing of the anusvar. The rules are stated in the Society's pamphlet शुद्धलेखनाचे नवे नियम (ʃuddhəlekhənaʦe nəve niyəm) published in Poona in 1936. The most important modifications of the standard rules given above are these:

a. If the anusvar usually written on certain words (that is, not suffixes or particles) is not realised in modern Marathi speech, it should not be written, unless it is considered important to show the etymology of the word, or unless it is the only means of distinguishing in meaning between pairs of words, as given above in 3.i.note a.

b. The anusvar usually written on the suffixes नें and नीं , and on the particles given above in rule ii.c. should be omitted. e.g.

मुलाने	मुलांनी	खाली	मागे	आता
mulane	mulanii	khalii	mage	ata

The anusvar is, however, still written to represent colloquial forms such as those given above in ii.a. and c.

c. The anusvar usually written on the word नाहीं , nahii , should be written only when this verbal form refers to the first person, singular or plural, and the second person plural; and the anusvar on the plural form नाहींत , nahiit , should be omitted.

d. The anusvar written on the final character of the word कांहीं , kahii , should be omitted, कांही .

CHAPTER 3

CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed in this way are called संयुक्ताक्षर (səỹyuktakṣər) by Marathi grammarians, or जोडाक्षर (zoḍakṣər) in the teaching of writing in schools. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters is described in the Sanskrit section[1], but the style used in writing Marathi corresponds, in the conjunct characters, with the style of the Bombay characters given in the tables in this section[2]. The Marathi conjunct characters are discussed in this chapter in the same classes as the Sanskrit conjunct characters.[3]

1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters occur in Marathi in these contexts:

i. In Marathi words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from the modern languages; e.g.

ढब्बू	घड्याळ	व्हावा
ḍhəbbuu	ghəḍyaḷ	vhava

ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Marathi, or learned words used only in the literary language; e.g.

पुस्तक	पत्र	ईश्वर
pustək	pətr	iiʃvər

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1.
2. See above, Ch.2.i - iii.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

रस्ता	कोर्ट	स्टेशन
rasta	kort	stefən

2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an əkar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an ə-glide, as in फक्त , phəkt', शास्त्र ʃastr'.[1]

The realisation in modern Marathi of əkar characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling.[2] For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final əkar consonant character, the final character of the base is usually realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other contexts, where an əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an əkar consonant character, and the second part begins with a consonant character. Examples of such words are given below with each class of conjunct characters.

3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters of all the classes given in the Sanskrit section[3] occur in Marathi, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters occur. Those which are used in writing Marathi are

1. This glide is not represented in transcribing words to which this rule applies.
2. See Ch.2,1. notes a. and b.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

shown by examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords frequently used in Marathi. More rarely used loanwords, which may occur in literary Marathi, are included among the examples given with each class in the Sanskrit section.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

The series of characters of this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section[1]. Most of the consonant characters of the Marathi syllabary occur in this class. The character representing -rrə is written र् , the superscribed stroke representing r preceding another consonant[2].

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not usually written as the first part of a conjunct character in this class; but in Marathi writing the characters ख्ख , khkhə and ठ्ठ , ṭhṭhə are sometimes used. The combinations -nnə and -mmə are represented in some words by writing the ənusvar over the character preceding म or न . e.g.

संमति or सम्मति		गंमत	संनिधि or सन्निधि		अन्न
səmməti	but	gəmmət	sənnidhi	but	ənn

The following examples illustrate Marathi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

आण्णा	आणणें	किल्ला	बोलला	ड्ग्गा	आगगाडी
aṇṇa	aṇ-ṇe[3]	killa	bol-la[3]	ḍəgga	ag'gadii[4]

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Conjunct Characters, Class 1.
2. See below, Class 3.iii.a.
3. Verbal forms.
4. Compound word.

Reading examples[1].

फिक्का अक्कल सख्खी डग्गा *कच्चा गच्ची इच्छा लज्जा
हट्टी लट्ठ चिट्ठी स्वड्डा झाण्णव पत्ता उत्थान स्द्धी बुद्धि
अन्न छप्पन्न लप्फा ढब्बू हिय्या किर्र हल्लीं सव्वा इश्श हिस्सा

Class 2. Two vərgiiy characters joined.

The full series of conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section[2]. The characters of this class which occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are given below. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may occur as loanwords in Marathi literary texts.

i.

क्त	त्क	ग्द	द्ग	ग्ध	द्घ
-ktə	-tkə	-gdə	-dgə	-gdhə	-dghə
त्प	प्त	द्ब	ब्द	ब्ज	
-tpə	-ptə	-dbə	-bdə	-bjə	

ii. Most of the characters given under ii.a. in the Sanskrit section occur in literary Marathi, representing homorganic nasal consonants; but the method of representing these consonants by writing the anusvar on the preceding character is more often used.[3] The word देहान्त, dehant, 'death', a learned Sanskrit loanword, is written with the conjunct character, which distinguishes it from the word with a Marathi suffix, देहांत, dehat, 'in the body'. Among the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b. only ज्ञ, jnə, and त्न, -tnə occur in Marathi. ज्ञ is not

1. For transcription, see p.131. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.2. The numbers i. - iv. correspond with the arrangement of these characters in the Sanskrit section. 3. See above, Ch.2,3.i. anusvar.

calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the varṇamala. Words beginning with ज्ञ are usually placed last in Marathi dictionaries.

iii. These characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

क्म	ग्न	घ्न	त्म	द्म	प्न
-kmə	-gnə	-ghnə	-tmə	-dmə	-pnə

iv. Only two characters of this group occur in Marathi, in Sanskrit loanwords: ङ्म , -ṇmə and न्म , -nmə .

The examples given below illustrate words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

शक्ति	शकती	गुप्त	कापतो	शब्द	उबदार
ʃəkti	ʃək-tii[1]	gupt	kap-to[1]	ʃəbd	ub'dar

Reading examples[2]

युक्ति चमत्कार सद्गुण उपोद्घात मुग्ध षट्कोण उत्पन्न
शब्द गुप्त सत्फल समाप्त उद्भव उद्बोधक फक्त
लप्त आत्मा पद्मा रत्न ज्ञान जन्म वाङ्मय

Class 3. Characters joined with antəsth characters.

i. Characters joined with following य .

The series of characters in this class is given in the Sanskrit section[3]. All the consonant characters of the Marathi syllabary, except ङ , ṇə and ञ , ɲə , occur in this class, though some occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. Many of these characters occur in Marathi

1. Verbal forms. 2. For transcription of examples, see p.131.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.1.

as a result of certain grammatical processes. English loanwords are sometimes written with characters joined with य , to represent the vowel sound in words such as ब्यँक , 'bank' and क्यँप 'camp'.

Reading examples[1]

वाक्य	डोक्याला	संख्या	आग्या	च्या	तिच्या
राज्य	ज्यानें	तुझ्या	पेट्या	मोठ्यानें	चिठ्ठ्या
गाड्या	पेढ्याचा*	होण्यास	आण्याचें*	त्याच्या	
पोथ्या	उद्यां	मध्यें	न्याहाळणें	प्याला	नफ्याचा*
धोब्यानें	अभ्यास	भ्याला	रम्य	सूर्य	खोल्या
कराव्यास	व्याख्यान	अवश्य	रहस्य	मनुष्य	
ह्याला	माळ्यानें	आत्म्याचा*	मुख्य	नद्या	

ii. Characters joined with following व .

Only a few of the conjunct characters in this series, given in the Sanskrit section[2], occur in Marathi, most of which occur in loanwords. The characters which occur in Marathi words, and in some loanwords in common use, are illustrated in the examples given below. Marathi words are written with व्ह , Sanskrit loanwords with ह्व .

The realisation of a final əkar consonant character in some words which form compounds with the words वाला , vala , or वार , var , illustrates the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in the same way as conjunct characters. For example:

पक्वान्न	but	डाकवाला	ध्वनि	but	बुधवार
pəkvann		ḍak'vala	dhvəni		budh'var

1. For transcription, see p.131.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.

Reading examples[1]

क्वचित् ग्वाही उच्छ्वास ज्वाला विश्वास स्वतः
ईश्वर स्वच्छ स्वप्न द्वारा सरस्वती केव्हां व्हावा
तत्त्वज्ञान महत्त्व अन्वय सर्व ध्वजा व्हाळ श्वास

iii. Characters joined with preceding र् or with following र .

a. र् preceding another character.

. The characters in this series are given in the Sanskrit section[2]. These conjunct characters are formed by placing the stroke called रेफ , reph , above the character before which र् is to be realised as the first of two or more consecutive consonants. The place of this stroke on the various characters, whether akar or with vowel signs, is given in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section. These characters occur in Marathi words, in Sanskrit loanwords, and in loanwords from other languages. Characters are not usually doubled when written with reph in Marathi words, though in the writing of Sanskrit doubling may sometimes occur. The characters which occur in Marathi are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

The following examples illustrate the realisation of र , with zero-vowel, followed by another consonant character, similar to the realisation of reph written above a consonant character:

कर्ता	करता	अर्पण	सरपण	तर्क	परकर
kərta	kər-ta[3]	ərpəɳ	sər'pəɳ	tərk	pər'kər

1. For transcription, see p.131.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3., Class 3.iii.a.
3. Verbal form.

A special form of reph is written to represent र् preceding य or ह in Marathi words. This form of reph is sometimes written with ह in Sanskrit loanwords, but it is not usual to write this form in a Sanskrit text[1]. The following examples illustrate reph written in this form with ह :

त-्हा	क-्हाडा	गि-्हाईक	ऱ्हस्व
tərha	kərhaḍa	girhaiik	rhəsv[2]

The writing of reph in this form with य is usually restricted to Marathi words in which the combination of र् and य arises from grammatical processes. Other words are usually written with the superscribed reph. e.g.

सूर्य	सूर्या-	दुसरा	दुसऱ्या-
suury[3]	suurya-[4]	dus'ra	dus'rya-[4]

The word आचारी , when changed to the 'crude form', before adding suffixes or particles, is distinguished from the 'crude form' of the word आचार्य by this difference in the writing of reph:

आचार्य	आचार्या-	आचारी	आचाऱ्या-
acary[5]	acarya-[4]	acarii[6]	acarya-[4]

Reading examples[7]

तर्क मूर्ख मार्ग दीर्घ खुर्ची खुर्च्या अर्ज* कोर्ट गार्ड
पूर्ण कीर्ति अर्थात् वर्दळ अर्धा अर्पण ऊर्फ बर्फ
दुर्बल गर्भ धर्म धार्मिक धैर्य सर्व दर्शन हर्ष नर्स
त-्हा दुर्लभ कु-्हाड पूर्वी वर्षे सवीत अर्ध्या ऱ्याऱ्या

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3,3.C1.3.iii.a. 2. Sanskrit 'hrəsve'.
3. Sanskrit loanword. 4. 'crude form'. 5. 'spiritual preceptor'.
6. 'Brahman cook'. 7. For transcription, see p.131.

b. र following another character.

The full series of these characters is given in the Sanskrit section[1]. Only a few of these characters occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords and some English loanwords. For the simplification of printing, new forms such as भ्र , bhrə and श्र , ʃrə are sometimes used. The reading examples given below illustrate the characters of this group which occur in Marathi.

Reading examples[2]

क्रम क्रम इंग्रजी आग्रह त्रास छिद्र चित्र
प्रयत्न प्रीति अभ्र प्राप्त नम्र तीव्र ताम्रट
श्रीमंत सहस्र व्याण्णव समुद्र

iv. Characters with preceding ल् or with following ल .

a. ल् preceding another character.

The characters of this group which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section[3]. The characters occurring in Marathi are illustrated by the words given as reading examples below.

b. ल following another character.

The characters of this group used in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section[4]. The reading examples given below illustrate the characters which occur in Marathi.

The following words illustrate consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, realised in the same way as conjunct characters:

उलटी	बोलतो	घालणें	बसला	घेतला
ul'ʈii	bol-to[5]	ghal-ɳe[5]	bəs-la[5]	ghet-la[5]

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.b. 2. For transcription of examples, see p.131.
3. See Sanskrit,Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iv.a.
4. ibid., iv.b.
5. Verbal forms.

Reading examples[1]

बलगना फाल्गुण स्वल्प कोल्हा कल्हई ल्होवी क्लास स्लेट

Class 4. vargiiy characters joined with preceding or following uusm characters.

1. vargiiy characters joined with श , ष or स .

a. श् , ष् or स् preceding a vargiiy character.

The full series of these characters occurring in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section[2]. Those which occur in Marathi are illustrated in the examples given below. Most of the characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords, and the character स्ट occurs in English loanwords.

The following examples illustrate Marathi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in the same way as conjunct characters:

पुस्तक	पुसतो	नमस्कार	हिसका	पुष्प	ऐसपैस
pustək	pus-to[3]	nəməskar	his'ka	puṣp	əÿs'pəÿs

Reading examples[4]

आश्चर्य पश्चिम् पुष्कळ उष्ट राष्ट्र श्रेष्ठ रस्ता तस्त

व्यवस्था स्तब्ध निष्फल कृष्ण स्नान स्थिर रस्त्यानें

स्त्री स्त्र्या स्पष्ट दृष्टि दृष्ट्या स्थिति आइचर्य स्फूर्ति

शास्त्र स्नेह स्कूल स्टेशन पोस्ट

1. For transcription, see p.132.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.a.
3. Verbal form.
4. For transcription, see p.132.

b. ष or स following a vərgiiy character.

The series of characters of this group which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section[1]. Only a few of these characters occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords. These are illustrated in the reading examples given below. The character क्ष , kṣə , is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and is often included in the vərṇəmala[2]. Words beginning with this character are usually placed in Marathi dictionaries after words beginning with ह .

Reading examples [3]

वत्सल परीक्षा दुर्लक्ष तीक्ष्ण क्षत्रिय वन्स ओक्साबोक्षी
सूक्ष्म अक्षरशः उत्सुक अकस्मात्

ii. ह preceding or following ənunasik ('nasal') characters.

a. ह preceding an ənunasik character.

These characters are given in the Sanskrit section[4]. Only one of the characters is used in Marathi, in the word ब्राह्मण brahmən .

b. ह following an ənunasik character.

The characters ण्ह , -ṇhə , न्ह , -nhə and म्ह , -mhə , occur in Marathi[5].

Reading examples[6].

तुम्ही आम्ही कण्हणें न्हावी म्हातारा उन्हाळा चिन्ह

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.b.
2. Compare note on the character ज्ञ in Class 2.ii.b. above.
3. For transcription of examples, see p.132.
4. See Sanskrit,Ch.3,3.Class 4.ii.a. 5. ibid.b.
6. For transcription of examples, see p.132.

Marathi prose passage[1]

प्रत्येक शहराचें महत्व कांहीं एक विशिष्ट गोष्टींत आहे. आपल्या या मुंबई इलाख्यांत आज मुंबई, अहमदाबाद, सोलापूर वगैरे शहरें व्यापारासाठीं प्रसिद्ध आहेत. सातारा, अहमदनगर, विजापूर वगैरे शहरें ऐतिहासिक दृष्ट्या महत्त्वाचीं आहेत. पंढरपूर, नाशिक वगैरे शहरें धार्मिक दृष्टया श्रेष्ठ गणिलीं जातात. पुणें शहराची प्रसिद्धि विद्वानांचें माहेरघर म्हणून विशेष आहे. कारण या ठिकाणीं सर्व प्रकारच्या शिक्षणाच्या जितक्या सोयी आहेत, तितक्या इतर ठिकाणीं नाहींत, आणि पूर्वी पेशव्यांच्या वेळीं काय किंवा हल्लींच्या इंग्रजी राजवटींत काय महाराष्ट्रांतील विद्वान् लोकांचें तें एक आवडतें स्थान होऊन राहिलें आहे. पुणें शहर समुद्रसपाटीपासून १८५० फूट उंच आहे. या शहराची स्थापना दोनशें वर्षांपूर्वी शिवाजीमहाराजांचे गुरू दादाजी कोंडदेव यांनीं केली. महाराजांचा वाडा येथें होता आणि रायगड घेईपर्यंत त्यांचे मुख्य ठाणें पुण्यासच असे. महाराजांच्या पश्चात् सातारा हें शहर मराठ्यांच्या सत्तेचें केंद्र झालें. पुण्यानजीक सिंहगड किल्ला, भाटघर येतील धरण व तलाव आणि लष्करां-तील सुंदर इमारती पाहण्यासारख्या आहेत. पुण्यांतील शनिवारवाड्याजवळ श्री शिवाजीमहाराजांचें स्मारक म्हणून त्यांचा अश्वारूढ भव्य पुतळा उभा केलेला आहे.

1. Marathi Vachanmala, Bk.4, p.15, by Vasant Ramchandra Nerurkar, pub. Keshav Bhikaji Dhavale, Girgaum, Bombay.

Transcription of Reading Examples

Chapter 2.

1.i. nə gə ʈʂə ɖhə

jəg pəd khəɳ bəgh mən ʈhəg khət pəɖ dhəm
chət nəth ɖhəg kəɳ ɖəph bhəʈ ʈʂəkh zəɳ zhəʈ

mədət pəkəɖ ghəʈək bhəjən thəkət ʈhəɳək phəbət
dhəmək khəɖək ʈʂəɖhəɳ zəkhəm pəʈsət zəpət zhəgəɖ

khəʈ'pəʈ dhəm'kəʈ gəɖ'bəɖ məɳ'gəʈ thəb'kəʈ khəɳ'kəʈ
phəʈ'kən ʈʂəm'kət ʈətʂ'kəɳ dətʂ'kət kətʂ'kəʈ zhəʈ'kən

1.ii. və

kər jəl vər vən jəy thər vəy ghər ləɖh ləy
dhər kəl ləʈh bhər dər ləv ʈʂər ʈʂəl zər ʈʂəv

bədəl dhərəɳ cələn gəvət tənəy vəcən kəɳəv rəyət
tələph ɖhəkəl vərəv ʈʂərət nəzər gərəz məzəl vəzən

ləv'kər kər'mət pər'kər ʈər'phəl dhən'gər kər'vət
pəl'ʈəɳ kətʂ'rət pəkəɖ'vət ʈʂər'bəʈ kərəm'tətʂ

1.iii. sər bəs yəʃ həʈ hər səɳ ʃək ʃəv phəs
həs ʂəʈ khəs vəʃ ʃər rəs ʃəhə təhə səhə

phəɳəs pəsər ʃəpəth səɖək səməy hərəɳ sərəs kələʃ
ʃəhər bəsəv sərək dəʃək həzər ləhər səhəz phəsəl

hər'kət həy'gəy sər'vəʈ ʃət'pəʈ sər'pəɳ məs'lət
hənvəʈ sər'səkəʈ məsəɳ'vəʈ səməz'tətʂ

chəl phəl khəl sərəl zəvəl hələd vələɳ ɖhəvəl
pələs ʈʂəl'vəl bəl'kəʈ məz'zəvəl kəl'mələt zəvəl'sər

2.i. a e o aii

əɖ aɳ aʈh iid uuʈh ek əў̆k oɖh əў̆ʈ
uun əў̆ʈ iiɖ uus ol əў̆n əў̆t əў̆ʃ rɳ
səii məuu zəii nəuu itər usəl oləkh utər ukhəl
apəɳ əў̆vəz uɖət əў̆rəɳ sələii ojhər əў̆ʂədh oləkh

2.ii. kha hii to ne pəў̆ dhuu chi bhii ga ghe thuu ho

ʈhiik ruuɖh jhiil tel məў̆z doʂ drɖh bəў̆l hit duudh
kay hoy nav jev kəvi khəɖuu ʃev bəhu nəye bərii
ɖola pəў̆sa krpa dhobii ʃiʃu chatii bhiiti guru ʈʂəў̆da
baii bhauu rʂi suii eke yeii rtu əў̆ke olii

məy̆dan rumal ʈheviin jevuun kəv̆tuk nokər beɖuuk gəruuɖ
kəʈhor jiivən zəmiin deuuɭ pauus ləɖhaii tərazuu ʈʂuiʈii
vəgəy̆re ʈʂəv̆paʈii pahije məraʈhii ʈikauu bəy̆ragii bhikarii
itər ek əy̆kila utər uuʈh gheiin aii dhuuun

p.106. khiɖ'kii kor'ɖa dus'ra kəp'ɖe ik'ɖe ʈek'ɖii kuɳ'bii
ʈʂəv̆k'ʃii koy'ta guɖ'ghe əv'gha par'dhii ev'ɖha bat'mii
ʈər'buuz ker'suɳii phəv̆z'dar ʃik'vəɳ ub'dar nuk'taʈʂ
khəbər'dar phəsəv'ɳuuk hat'us'na soɖəv'ɳuuk ləhan'pəɳa

kəɭət kəɭ-to pəs'ra pəsər-tat sər'kuun sərək-tiil
ghəsər ghəs'ruun ghəs'riil ghəsər-ʃiil aʈh'vuun aʈhəv-tiil
bighəɖ bigh'ɖuun bighəɖ-lela əɖ'khəɭət əɖ'khəɭ-tat

Chapter 3.

Class 1.

phikka əkkəl səkkhii ɖəgga kəttʂa gəccii iccha ləjja
həʈʈii ləʈʈhə ciʈʈhii khəɖɖa ʃaɳɳəv pətta utthan rəddii buddhi
ənn chəppənn ləppha ɖhəbbuu hiyya kirr həllii səvva iʃʃ hissa

Class 2.

yukti cəmətkar sədguɳ upodghat mugdh ʂəʈkoɳ utpənn
ʃəbd gupt sətphəl səmapt udbhəv udbodhək phəkt
ləgn atma pədma rətn jɲan jənm vaŋməy

Class 3.i.

vaky ɖokyala səŋkhya agya ghya ticya
rajy jyane tujhya peʈya moʈhyane ciʈʈhya
gaɖya peɖhyaʈʂa hoɳyas aɳyaʈʂe tyacya
pothya udya mədhye nyahaɭ-ɳe pyala nəphyaʈʂa
dhobyane əbhyas bhyala rəmy suury kholya
kəravyas vyakhyan əvəʃy rəhəsy mənuʂy
hyala maɭyane atmyaʈʂa mukhy nədya

Class 3.ii.

kvəcit gvahii ucchvas jvala viʃvas svətəh
iiʃvər svəcch svəpn dvara sərəsvətii kevha vhava
təttvəjɲan məhəttv ənvəy sərv dhvəja vhaɭ ʃvas

Class 3.iii.

a. tərk muurkh marg diirgh khurcii khurcya ərz korʈ garɖ
puurɳ kiirti ərthat vərdəl ərdha ərpəɳ uurph bərph
durbəl gərbh dhərm dharmik dhəy̆ry sərv dərʃən hərʂ nərs
tərha durləbh kurhaɖ puurvii vərʂe sərvat ərdhya ryarya

b. krəm krəm iŋgrəjii agrəhə tras chidr citr
prəyətn priiti əbruu prapt nəmr tiivr tamrəʈ
ʃriimənt səhəsr tryaɳɳəv səmudr

Class 3.iv.

vəlgəna phalgun̪ svəlp kolha kəlhəii lhovii klas sle̪t

Class 4.

i.a. aʃcəry pəʃcim puṣkə̪l us̪t raṣ̪tr ʃres̪̪th rəsta təst
vyəvəstha stəbdh niṣphəl kr̪ṣn̪ snan sthir rəstyane
strii strya spəs̪t dr̪s̪ti dr̪s̪tya sthiti aʃcəry sphuurti
ʃastr snehə skuul s̪te̪ʃən post

b. vətsəl pəriikṣa durləkṣ tiikṣn̪ kṣətriyə vənsə oksabokṣii
suukṣm əkṣərəʃəh utsuk ək'smat

ii. tumhii amhii kən̪hən̪e nhavii mhatara unhal̪a cinh

Marathi Prose Passage[1]

prətyek ʃəhəra̪t̪se məhəttv kahii ek viʃiṣ̪t goṣ̪tiit ahe. ap'lya ya mumbəii ilakhyat az mumbəii, əh'mədabad, solapuur vəgəy̆re ʃəhəre vyaparasat̪hii prəsiddh ahet. satara, əh'məd'nəgər, vijapuur vəgəy̆re ʃəhəre əy̆tihasik dr̪s̪tya məhəttvacii ahet. pən̪dhər'puur, naʃik vəgəy̆re ʃəhəre dharmik dr̪s̪tya ʃres̪̪th gən̪ilii zatat. pun̪e ʃəhəracii prəsiddhi vidvanant̪se maher'ghər mhən̪uun viʃeṣ ahe. karən̪ ya t̪hikan̪ii sərv prəkar'cya ʃikṣən̪acya jit'kya soyii ahet, tit'kya itər t̪hikan̪ii nahiit, an̪i puurvii peʃvyancya vel̪ii kay kiɱva həllicya iŋgrəjii raj'vət̪iit kay məharaṣ̪tratiil vidvan lokant̪se te ek avəḍ'te sthan houun rahile ahe. pun̪e ʃəhər səmudrəpat̪iipasuun 1850 phuut̪ unt̪s ahe. ya ʃəhəracii sthapəna don ʃe vərṣapuurvii ʃivajiiməharajant̪se guru dadajii kon̪dədev yanii kelii. məharajantsa vaḍa yethe hota an̪i ray'gəḍ gheiipəryənt tyant̪se mukhy t̪han̪e pun̪yasət̪s əse. məharajancya pəʃcat satara he ʃəhər mərat̪hyancya sət̪tet̪se kendr zhale. pun̪yanəjiik siɱhəgəḍ killa, bhat̪'ghər yethiil dhərən̪ və t̪əlav an̪i ləṣkəratiil sundər imar'tii pah'n̪yasar'khya ahet. pun̪yatiil ʃənivar'vaḍyazəvəl̪ ʃrii ʃivajiiməharajant̪se smarək mhən̪uun tyant̪sa əʃvaruuḍh bhəvy put̪əl̪a ubha kelela ahe.

1. ənusvars to be read with zero-realisation are not transcribed in this passage.

GUJARATI SECTION

CHAPTER 1

ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The writing system of Gujarati (ગુજરાતી , gujəratii) is based on the Sanskrit system, with some modifications as in the other modern languages of Northern India which are written in the Devanagari script. The characters of the Gujarati script are arranged in the same way as those of the Devanagari script, given in the Sanskrit section[1].

The script is referred to as બાળબોધ (baḷəbodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. Each character is called અક્ષર (əkṣər), and the syllabic series is called વર્ણમાલા (vərṇəmala), 'character-series'. The terms used by Gujarati grammarians to refer to the characters are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in reading Gujarati differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters realised with the vowel ə , these terms are used in this section in their Gujarati form and transcribed in accordance with the realisation of the characters in Gujarati. The following examples illustrate the difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding terms used in this section:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	(əkṣərəm)	Gujarati	અક્ષર	(əkṣər)
	विरामः	(viraməh)		વિરામ	(viram)
	अन्तःस्थ	(əntəhsthə)		અન્તસ્થ	(əntəsth)

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

The table given below shows the arrangement of the Gujarati syllabary in roman notation. As the system of writing is syllabic, and the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting of either a vowel, or a consonant followed by the vowel ə , the roman tables show each consonant with this vowel. The vowel ə , when realised in this way with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent vowel'.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro-flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirate	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə[1]	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə[1]	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə)[2]	(ɲə)[2]	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və[3]
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə[4]	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		

VOWELS	ə a	i ii	u uu	e, ɛ[5] əy̆	o, ɔ[5] əv̆	r[4]
MODIFIERS	Nasal - ŋ or ~			Aspirated - h		

1. - 5. See notes on following page.

1. The characters represented by ɖə and ɖhə are realised medially and finally with the flapped consonants ɽ and ɽh in some words.
2. The characters represented by ŋə and ɲə occur only in combination with other consonants, in Sanskrit loanwords.
3. The character represented by və is usually realised with labiodental articulation.
4. The characters represented by ʂə and syllabic r occur only in Sanskrit loanwords.
5. The vowels e and ɛ are written in the script with the same character, or vowel sign, usually transcribed as e . The vowels o and ɔ are also written with the same character, or vowel sign, usually transcribed as o .

The series of vowels includes 'short' i and 'long' ii, 'short' u and 'long' uu. These pairs of vowels occur in Gujarati words, and the characters representing the 'short' and the 'long' vowels are written according to certain rules of orthography[1]. This distinction between the 'short' and 'long' vowels is preserved in this work in the transcription of the characters, though in modern Gujarati speech there is often little difference between the pronunciation of words written with the characters representing the 'short' or the 'long' vowels.

---

1. See Chapter 2, under 2.ii.Vowel Signs.

CHAPTER 2

CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The Gujarati characters are a modified form of the Devanagari characters, with some changes of line and form which have come about through an adaptation of the script for cursive writing. The characters are more rounded than those of the Devanagari script, and do not have a head-stroke. Comparison with the characters in the Sanskrit section will show how the Gujarati characters are related in form to those of the Devanagari script. The method of writing the Gujarati characters is in general the method described in the Introduction, and reference should be made to the notes on calligraphy given with each group of characters in the Sanskrit section. Special notes are given below on the calligraphy of any characters of which the order of strokes cannot be easily deduced from the Devanagari characters.

The Gujarati characters are described in this chapter under the same headings as the characters in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers.

1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vərgiiy' characters, 'əntəsth' characters and 'uuṣm' characters[1]. As they are given in the syllabary, these characters are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel ə , and they are described as અકાર (əkar). The realisation

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i - iii.

of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated by a diagonal stroke written at the foot of the character, thus ક્ , k- , ત્ , t- , and so on, as in Sanskrit. This stroke is called વિરામ (viram)[1] and a character written with this stroke is called 'halant' by Gujarati grammarians; but in the teaching of writing in schools, characters written with this stroke are described as ખોડું (khoḍũ, 'lame').

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in reading Gujarati differs somewhat from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later when the characters are discussed in detail.

a. A final əkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.[2]

b. A final əkar consonant character formed by combining two or more characters[3], or a final əkar consonant character preceded by a character written with the ənusvar representing a nasal consonant[4], is usually realised with an ə-glide.

c. A medial əkar consonant character is realised in certain contexts with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a three character word, and the final character has one of the vowel signs[5].

d. When an əkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an

---

1. See Sanskrit,Ch.2,1. 2. The viram is not written in Gujarati with characters which are realised in this way; it is written only in a few Sanskrit loanwords. 3. See below,Ch.3.2.
4. See below, 3.i.b. 5. See below, 2.ii.

ə-glide, before the addition of suffixes consisting of, or beginning with, a consonant character with one of the vowel signs.

For guidance in reading, final əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel are transcribed without ə , and medial əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide are transcribed thus: k' , t' , p' .

i. Characters of the vərgiiy group (વર્ગીય)[1].

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel ə . These characters fall into five વર્ગ (vərg), or classes, according to the five positions of articulation.

kə-vərg	ક kə	ખ khə	ગ gə	ઘ ghə	ઙ -ŋə[2]
cə-vərg	ચ cə	છ chə	જ jə	ઝ jhə	ઞ -ɲə
ʈə-vərg	ટ ʈə	ઠ ʈhə	ડ ɖə	ઢ ɖhə	ણ -ɳə
tə-vərg	ત tə	થ thə	દ də	ધ dhə	ન nə
pə-vərg	પ pə	ફ phə	બ bə	ભ bhə	મ mə

An older form of ફ is ફ .

1. See Sanskrit,Ch.2,1.i. 2. Characters which do not occur initially are shown by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

The characters ક , ફ , ઝ and ઠ are written thus:

ક ક ક ક ફ ફ ફ ફ

ઝ ઝ ઝ ઝ ઠ ઠ ઠ ઠ

The əkar consonant characters are referred to, as for instance in spelling, thus: ક , કક્કો (kəkko), ત , તત્તો (tətto), and so on.

The characters ઙ and ઞ do not occur in Gujarati words, but they are written, in combination with other characters, in some Sanskrit loanwords in the literary language. The characters ડ and ઢ are realised medially and finally as ɽə and ɽhə in certain words. Examples of this realisation are given later, after the vowel signs are discussed.[1]

Reading examples[2]

1. One character words. Four of the vərgiiy characters occur as words: ન છ જ ઢ

2. Two character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

ઘન પગ નખ ગજ ચડ મઠ કખ ભણ છઠ ઢગ

ઝટ ઘડ ધન તક થડ દમ બન ફટ જડ પણ

3. Three character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

બદન પકડ ઝડપ મદદ ચમન ફટક તગડ ગમત

જમણ બગડ નગદ ધમક દપટ તનખ ભજન પઠન

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

ધડપણ ભટકણ ચકમક ઝટપટ બડઇટ ગજકણ

---

1. See below, under 2.ii.
2. For transcription, see p.168.

ii. Characters of the əntəsth group (અન્તસ્થ)[1]

There are four Gujarati characters in this group, as in the same group of Sanskrit characters.

ય	લ	ર	વ
yə	lə	rə	və

When the characters ય and વ occur initially, or medially realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially, in positions in which əkar consonant characters are realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding syllable.[2]

e.g.	યજન	વન	ભય	જવ
	yəjən	vən	bhəy	jəv

Reading examples[3]

1. None of the əntəsth characters occurs as a word.

2. Two character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

રય પર લખ ઘર ખલ બર રજ રવ લગ વય

યવ લય છર ઝલ વર રડ કલ ચય ભર જય

3. Three character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

લચક ઇલર વરધ ઝરણ ભરડ વખત રતન તરફ

રવડ વરઢ લગણ યવન ચરક પલખ પવન ભરણ

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

કલતર લગભગ પડતર લડકણ તરતજ દફતર

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii. 2. Further examples of the realisation of these two characters are given below, under 2.ii.
3. For transcription, see p.168.

iii. Characters of the uuṣm group (ઊષ્મ)[1]

These characters as given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Gujarati characters are:

શ	ષ	સ	હ
ʃə	ʂə	sə	hə

The character ષ occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and when written in words in common use in Gujarati, it is often realised as ʃə except in formal reading.

Reading examples.[2]

1. None of the characters in this group occurs as a word.
2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

રસ શઠ સઢ શાણ હસ દશ યશ સર હસ શાત

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

લસણ હલક સરસ હરખ શપથ સમય હરણ ફણસ

4. Four and five character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel, second character in four character words, third character in the five character word, realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide.

સમજણ શરબત સરકટ કસરત હરકત વકતસર

The last consonant character in the Gujarati syllabary is ળ , -ɭə[3], realised as a retroflex lateral consonant with ə .

Reading examples.[2]

ફળ દળ હળ બળદ ઘવળ કમળ પરવળ હળવટ

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii. 2. For transcription, see p.168.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii. Vedic character.

The two characters ક્ષ and જ્ઞ , each representing syllables consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel ə , are often placed at the end of the series of consonant characters in the varṇə-mala, but they do not properly belong to the syllabary, and they are discussed later[1].

2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.[2]

i. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Gujarati correspond with the vowel characters in Sanskrit though the forms differ. Syllabic rr , l and ll do not occur in Gujarati[3]. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the varṇəmala.

અ	આ	ઈ	ઈ	ઉ	ઊ
ə	a	i	ii	u	uu
ઋ		એ	ઐ	ઓ	ઔ
syllabic r		e, ɛ[4]	əǐ	o, ɔ[4]	əŭ

The character ઋ , syllabic r , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords, used mainly in the literary language. The vowel characters are referred to as əkar, akar, ikar, ukar, and so on.

In all reading examples which follow, əkar consonant characters which occur in words having vowel characters or vowel signs should be realised according to the general rules already given, unless special notes are added.

---

1. See below, Ch.3.Classes 2. and 4. 2. For the use of vowel characters and vowel signs, see Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.i.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.i. 4. See above, Ch.1. The realisation of these vowel characters as e or ɛ , and as o or ɔ , is discussed below under ii. Vowel Signs.

Reading examples[1]

1. Vowel characters only. આ એ આઓ એઓ

2. Vowel characters with əkar characters.

ઈસ ઊન એક આપ એઢ ઋણ આજ ઔઠ
ઊચક ઈયળ ઊઠ એઠ ઔષધ ઓઘ ઉભડ ઈશ
ઐડ મઉ લઈ દઈ ગઈ જઈએ દઈએ લઈએ

ii. Vowel signs.

Vowel signs corresponding to each vowel character, except અ , are added to the əkar form of the consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a to əv̆ . The vowel signs are given here added to the character ક .

કા	કિ	કી	કુ	કૂ	કૃ	કે	કૈ	કો	કૌ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke,kɛ	kəy̆	ko,kɔ	kəv̆

The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs is in general the same as that described in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section[2]. Some of the characters are modified in form when certain of the vowel signs are added.

a. The upright stroke of a character is written without rounding the foot when the vowel signs for u or uu are added:

ગુ	ગૂ	પુ	પૂ	સુ	સૂ
gu	guu	pu	puu	su	suu

b. Special forms:

જા	જિ	જી	જુ	જૂ	ણુ	રુ,રૂ	રૂ,રૂ	દ	શૃ	હૃ
ja	ji	jii	ju	juu	ɳu	ru	ruu	dr	ʃr	hr

1. For transcription of examples, see p.168.
2. See Sanskrit,Ch.2,2.ii.

In the teaching of writing in schools, and in spelling, the upright stroke of a character, and of the vowel signs corresponding to the characters આ , ઓ and ઔ are referred to as કાનો (kano), and the diagonal superscribed strokes in the vowel characters and signs, as in એ , ઐ , ઓ and ઔ , are referred to as માત્રા (matra). The vowel signs for ઇ and ઈ are called હ્રસ્વ ઇ (hrəsv i) and દીર્ઘ ઈ (diirgh ii), and the vowel signs for ઉ and ઊ are called હ્રસ્વ ઉ (hrəsv u) and દીર્ઘ ઊ (diirgh uu)[1]. Characters having vowel signs are described as 'akar', 'ukar', 'ekar' and so on.

Reading examples[2]

1. One character words.

કે પૈ સૌ છે જા ઘી તે ચા જે ભૂ ઘો જી

2. Words of two or more characters.

શેઠ રોજ ઠીક દૂધ લોક રૂપ ચીજ દૃઢ હિત જાય
ગોદ લાવ નહિ બહુ મને પછી આજે ઊભો ઉગે
આપો ઋષિ ઋતુ સૌએ તેઓ ભાઈ છીએ જુઓ
બૅરી ગોળો વારુ પૈસો મુકે રાજી ચેલો દિવો કૃપા વિષે
નિશાળે ઉજાણી રૂપિયો તાબેદારી હોશિયારી ભાઈઓએ

Realisation of the vowels એ and ઓ .

These vowel characters, and the corresponding vowel signs, each represent two vowels of different quality. The vowel character એ and the corresponding sign are realised in the majority of words as e , but in some words as ɛ ; the vowel character ઓ and the corresponding sign are realised in the majority of words as o , but in

1. hrəsv, 'short' ; diirgh, 'long'.
2. For transcription, see p.168.

some words as ɔ . The realisation of these characters as ɛ and ɔ is described by Gujarati grammarians as વિવૃત (vivrt, 'open'). Some pairs of words, written in the same way, are distinguished in meaning only by the realisation of the vowel ઓ as o or as ɔ . Some words in frequent use in which these vowels are realised as 'open' vowels are given below; a fuller list of such words is given in the Gujarati dictionary 'Narmakosh'[1], and in the dictionary 'Jodnikosh'[2] words in which the 'open' vowels occur are specially noted.

Words in which એ , or the corresponding sign, is realised as ɛ :

એમ એદ્દી કહે- કેડ કેદ કેમ કેરી ગેલ ઘેર ઘેલો છેન જેમ ઝેર ઠેલ તેમ દેણ નેમ પહેર-[3] પેર પેસ- પહેલો ફેણ બે બેઠ- બેઠક બેસ- બેન બહેન મેમાન મેર મેલ રહે- લે- લેણ લહેર વેપારી વેર વહેલો શહેર સહેજ સહેલો

Words in which ઓ , or the corresponding sign, is realised as ɔ :

ઓગળ ઓછાડ ઓઝલ ઓસર- કોયલ કોયલો[4] કોગલો કોઠ કોડી કોણ કોલસો કોલિયો ખોળો ગોળ ચોક[5] ચોપડી તો ઠોડ- ઠોઢ ઘોલ ઘોળો ઘોળ- નોકર નોખો નોમ પહોળો પોણો[6] બો મોર મોવાળો મોસાળ મોળ રોફ વહોર શોક શોખ સો સોડ હો-

When characters with these vowels are written with the mark of nasalisation known as the anusvar[7], they are realised as 'open' vowels.

1. નર્મકોશ , narmakoʃ, pub.1873. 2. સાર્થ ગુજરાતી જોડણીકોશ sarthə gujərati jodəɳii koʃ, pub.1949. The 'open' realisation of these vowel characters and signs is indicated in this dictionary by inverting the matra. 3. The words written with a hyphen are verbal bases. 4. In this and later words in which there are two okar characters, it is the first which is realised with ɔ .
5. Similarly all words in which the first syllable is ચો , 'four'.
6. Similarly other words in which the first syllable is પોણ-, 'less a quarter'. 7. See below, under 3.Modifiers, i. anusvar.

Some words which are distinguished in meaning only by the realisation of ઓ as o or as ɔ :

ગોળ	gol, 'round'	gɔl, 'treacle'
ખોળ	khol, 'enquiry'	khɔl, 'oil-cake'
ચોપડી	copəɽii, 'smeared'	cɔpəɽii, 'book'
કોણ	koɳ, 'angle'	kɔɳ, 'who'
ચોળી	colii, 'bodice'	cɔlii, (name of a vegetable)
સોળ	sol, 'sixteen'	sɔl, 'weal', 'stripe'

Realisation of əkar consonant characters in words with vowel characters and signs in certain positions.

a. When a medial əkar consonant character, in a three character word, is followed by a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, and the semi-vowels represented by ય and વ form diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding syllable, as in

એટલો	ચરબી	મણકો	ફાયદો	છેવટે
eṭ'lo	cər'bii	məɳ'ko	phay'do	chev'ṭe

The realisation of medial əkar characters in words of more than three characters varies according to the position in each word of the characters with vowel signs. In compound words, the realisation depends upon the form of the words joined in the compound. The following examples illustrate the realisation of əkar consonant characters in such words.

Second characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

શેતકરી	કેટલાક	નુકસાન	જાનવર
ʃet'kərii	keṭ'lak	nuk'san	jan'vər

Other characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

દુકાનદાર	તાબડતોબ	કપટબાજી	પરવાનગી
dukan'dar	tabəḍ'tob	kəpəṭ'bajii	pər'van'gii

b. When a suffix beginning with a consonant character is added to a noun or pronoun, or to a verbal base, ending in an əkar consonant character, this final character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, as in these examples:

ગામનો	તમને	કરતો	બોલવા	લાગશે
gam-no	təm-ne	kər-to	bol-va	lag-ʃe

When such suffixes are added to verbal bases of three or more characters, of which the final and pre-final consonant characters are əkar, the realisation of the pre-final character varies in the way illustrated by the following examples:

સમજ	સમજી	સમજવા	સમજાવવા
səməj	səm'jii	səməj-va	səm'jav-va
થરક	થરકે	થરકતો	થરકાવવો
thərək	thər'ke	thərək-to	thər'kav-vo

Reading examples[1]

1. əkar consonant characters realised as in note a.

એકઠા અપણે બકરી નકશો પોગળી આળસુ કસબી
પાયલી જપરુખ પાયદળ કોઠવાલ ગુજરાતી કસબચોર

2. əkar consonant characters realised as in note b.

છેતર છેતરે છેતરવી પકડ પકડો પકડવો
પસર પસરીને પસરવી મોકલી મોકલવી

---

1. For transcription, see p.168.

Realisation of medial and final ડ and ઢ .

The character ડ is usually realised medially or finally as a flapped consonant, ɽə[1], except when preceded by a character written with the ənusvar[2]. In some words, however, it is always realised as a stop, ɖə . The character ઢ is usually realised as a stop, ɖhə , and sometimes as a flapped consonant. In some words the realisation as a stop is constant. The following examples are some of the words in frequent use in which ડ and ઢ are always realised as stops[3]:

આડો ઉડ- ઓડ કોડ ખાડો ગાડર ગાડી જોડો તીડ ખુડ-લાડ લાડવો હાડ આઢી ઓઢાણ કાઢ- કાઢ ઢાઢી ખુઢી વાઢ-

These characters are always realised as stops after nasalisation.

In the following pairs of words the realisation of ડ as ɖə or as ɽə is necessary for distinction of meaning:

પાડો	paɖo, 'male buffalo'	paɽo, 'neighbourhood'
જાડું	jaɖũ[4], 'thick'	jaɽũ[4], 'jaw'
વડો	vəɖo, 'cancelled'	vəɽo, 'elderly'

Orthography of the 'short' and 'long' vowels.[5]

The following general rules are usually applied in writing the vowel characters ઈ , ઈ and ઉ , ઊ , and the corresponding vowel signs, though practice varies, and numerous exceptions occur.

a. ઈ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in final characters, or immediately preceding a final əkar consonant

1. See note in 1.i. above. 2. See below, under 3.i. ənusvar.
3. See Notes on Gujarati Phonology, T.N.Dave, Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies, Vol.VI.p.673 ff.
4. For the mark of nasalisation on the final character of this word, see below, under 3.i.ənusvar. 5. Fuller notes on Gujarati orthography are given in 'Jodnikosh', Introduction, p.30 ff.

character, unless this is a conjunct character[1]; e.g.

લઈ	કરી	પાણી	ઠીક	ચીજ	ગરીબ
ləii	kərii	paɳii	ṭhiik	ciij	gəriib

ઈ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in all other positions[2]; e.g.

દિવસ	તિખટ	બિલાડી	હોશિયાર	ઘડિયાળ
divəs	tikhəṭ	biladii	hoʃiyar	ghəḍiyaḷ

Some exceptions:

બીજો	હકીકત	લીધે	કીધો	શીખીને
biijo	həkiikət	liidhe	kiidho	ʃiikhiine

b. ઉ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in a medial position when immediately preceding a final əkar consonant character, unless this is a conjunct character; e.g.

ઉઠ	દૂધ	ભૂખ	ફૂલ	મજૂર
uuṭh	duudh	bhuukh	phuul	məjuur

ઉ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in other positions, though many words occur in Gujarati texts written with either the 'short' or the 'long' vowel[2]; e.g.

ઉનાળો	દુકાન	સુથાર	વારુ	આળસુ
unaḷo	dukan	suthar	varu	aḷ'su

Some exceptions:

ઉચક	ઉપર	ઉભો	કૂવો	સૂઝ-
uucək	uupər	uubho	kuuvo	suujh-

The Sanskrit orthography is usually preserved in Sanskrit loan-words; e.g.

હિત	ભીતિ	પુરુષ	ભૂમિ	બહુ
hit	bhiiti	puruṣ	bhuumi	bəhu

---

1. See below, Chapter 3.
2. For this vowel written with the ənusvar, see below, under 3.i.

3. Modifiers.

The modifiers, અનુસ્વાર (ənusvar) and વિસર્ગ (visərg), used in the Devanagari script, are both used in writing Gujarati.[1]

i. ənusvar.

The ənusvar is a mark representing nasalisation, and is written in Gujarati in the form of a dot above a character, thus:

ચં	આં	ઈં	ઉં	એં	ઓં	કાં	કિં	કું	કેં	કોં
əṃ	aṃ	iṃ	uṃ	eṃ	oṃ	kaṃ	kiṃ	kuṃ	keṃ	koṃ

The ənusvar is placed at the right side of any superscribed stroke, and it is written on the character after every other stroke, as in the Devanagari script.[2]

Realisation of the ənusvar.

a. The ənusvar is realised in some words as the nasalisation of the vowel of the character with which it is written. This realisation occurs usually when the ənusvar is written with any of the vowels આ to ઔ, except in some Sanskrit loanwords. The ənusvar realised in this way occurs in many grammatical forms. Examples:

કંઈ	માં	ઈંટ	તું	ઊંચ	મેં	પહોંચ	પોંવા
kə̃ii	mã	ĩiṭ	tũ	ũuc	mẽ	pəhɔ̃c	põ̆vva

Grammatical forms:

છોકરાં	બધાંએ	કેળું	મારું	જાઉં	આવવું
chokərã	bədhãe	keḷũ	marũ	jaũ	av-vũ

The 'long' vowels ઈ and ઊ are usually written in characters with the ənusvar when it represents nasalisation of a vowel,

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i. and ii.
2. ibid., note on calligraphy of the ənusvar.

except in grammatical forms described as 'neuter singular', which are always written with the 'short' vowel; e.g.

વીંછી	ભીંત	ઊડો	મારું	લીંબું	ઊડું
vĩichii	bhĩit	ũuɖo	marũ	lĩibũ	ũuɖũ

Some words are written with either 'short' or 'long' vowels.

The vowel characters એ and ઓ , and the corresponding signs, are realised with the ənusvar as ɛ̃ and ɔ̃ ; e.g.

ખેંચવું	ભેંસ	સોંપવું	પહોંચવું
khɛ̃c-vũ	bhɛ̃s	sɔ̃p-vũ	pəhɔ̃c-vũ

b. The ənusvar written on a character preceding one of the vərgiiy characters may be realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the following character, or as n before a character of the cə-vərg. This realisation of the ənusvar occurs mainly in reading Sanskrit loanwords. When the ənusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final əkar consonant character, the final character is usually realised with an ə-glide[1]. Examples:

કંઠ	શાંતિ	જંતુ	સંભાળ	સંબંધ
kənʈh	ʃanti	jəntu	səmbhaɭ	səmbəndh

As in Sanskrit, there is an alternative method of representing nasal consonants in this context. This method is described later.[2] The 'short' forms of the vowels ઈ and ઉ are usually written with the ənusvar representing a nasal consonant; e.g.

લિંગ	ચિંતા	સુંદર	કુંભાર
liŋg	cinta	sundər	kumbhar

---

1. See above, 1.b. Realisation of əkar consonant characters.
2. See below, Ch.3,3.Class 2.ii.

c. When the ənusvar is written on a character preceding an əntəsth or an uuṣm character, as in Sanskrit loanwords and learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways, according to the position of articulation of the following consonant. The realisation of the ənusvar in these contexts by speakers in various parts of India is described in the Sanskrit section[1]. The usual Gujarati practice is illustrated by these examples:

ənusvar before ય , realised as ỹ , as in સંયોગ , səỹyog

ənusvar before લ , realised as l̃ , as in પુંલિંગ , pul̃liŋg

ənusvar before all other əntəsth and uuṣm characters, realised as ṽ ; e.g. સંરક્ષણ વારંવાર અંશ અહિંસા સિંહ

səṽrəkṣəṇ[2] vərəṽvar əṽʃ əhiṽsa siṽh

Reading examples[3]

1. ənusvar realised as in note a.

શું હું કંઈ ભોંય ફેંક ખેંચ સાંજ ઊંઘ સીંચ ભેંસ

બાંધ ઝાંખ તેવાંજ માંદું પહોંચ વિંટી થાઊં લીંબું

2. ənusvar realised as in notes b. and c.

આનંદ જંતુ વસંત મંડ અંદર કંજુસ અંબા સંપ

ii. visərg

This modifier, described in the Sanskrit section[4], does not occur in Gujarati words, but it occurs medially in a few Sanskrit loanwords and is realised as the doubling of the following consonant, as in દુઃખ , dukkh (also written દુખ , dukh) and અંત:કરણ , əntəkkərəṇ.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i.c.
2. ક્ષ represents k- joined with -ṣə . See Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.b.
3. For transcription, see p.169.
4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii.

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The traditional order of the characters in the syllabic series is shown in the following table[1]:

અ	આ	ઈ	ઈ	ઉ	ઊ
	એ	ઐ	ઓ	ઔ	
		અં	અઃ		
ક	ખ	ગ	ઘ	ઙ	
ચ	છ	જ	ઝ	ઞ	
ટ	ઠ	ડ	ઢ	ણ	
ત	થ	દ	ધ	ન	
પ	ફ	બ	ભ	મ	
		ય	ર	લ	વ
		શ	ષ	સ	હ
			ળ		

The vowel character ઋ is not usually included in the table.

The table in which the vowel characters (except ઋ), and the modifiers added to the character અ , are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Gujarati the બારાખડી , barakhdii, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

---

1. Cf. Devanagari table in Sanskrit, Ch.2,4.

These two tables show the order in which characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit, except that words beginning with characters with the anusvar are placed after words beginning with the same character without the anusvar, as illustrated below:

Sanskrit: a ai aṃyə aṃʃə aṃhə akə akhə ...

Gujarati: a ai akə akhə ... asə ahə aṁkə aṁkhə ...

5. Numerals.

The Gujarati numerals are written thus:

૧	૨	૩	૪	૫	૬	૭	૮	૯	૧૦
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the same system of punctuation is used as in English prose. The system used in Gujarati verse is the same as the Sanskrit system.[1]

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,6.

CHAPTER 3

CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed by joining other characters are called સંયુક્તાક્ષર (səỹyuktakṣər) by Gujarati grammarians or જોડાક્ષર (joḍakṣər) in the teaching of writing in schools. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters in the Devanagari script is described in the Sanskrit section[1]. Gujarati conjunct characters are constructed by similar methods, with these modifications:

i. Some conjunct characters are formed by writing two characters together, without the usual separating space, as in ક્ક , kkə.

ii. When conjunct characters are formed by omitting the upright stroke of the first character[2], the remaining part of the first character is often written on a lower level than the first part of the second character, as in જ્ઞ , ggə , બ્બ , bbə.

1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

Conjunct characters occur in Gujarati in the following contexts:

i. In Gujarati words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from modern languages; e.g.

ડાહ્યું	બચ્ચું	નક્કી	ચિટ્ઠી
ḍahyũ	bəccũ	nəkkii	ciṭṭhii

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1.

2. ibid., Ch.3,1.ii.

ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Gujarati, or learned words used only in the literary language; e.g.

પુસ્તક	પત્ર	ઈશ્વર
pustək	pətr	iiʃvər

iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

રસ્તો	ગાર્ડ	સ્ટેશન
rəsto	gard	sʈeʃən

2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an əkar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an ə-glide, as in જન્મ , jənm' , શાસ્ત્ર , ʃastr'.[1]

The realisation in modern Gujarati of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling. For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final əkar consonant character, the final character of the base is realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other contexts, where an əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an əkar consonant character and the second part begins with a consonant character. Examples of such words are given below with the various classes of conjunct characters.

1. See above, Ch.2,1.a. and b. This glide is not represented in the transcription of words to which this rule applies.

3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

The conjunct characters used in writing Gujarati are classified in this chapter in the same way as the conjunct characters given in the Sanskrit section[1]. Conjunct characters of all the classes occur in Gujarati, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters are used. Those which are used in writing Gujarati are shown by the examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords in frequent use. Some of the reading examples given in the Sanskrit section occur in literary texts as learned loanwords, and these may be transcribed without difficulty in Gujarati characters.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.[2]

Most of the characters of the Gujarati syllabary occur in this class, as 'doubled' characters. The character for -rra is written as ર્ર , the superscribed stroke representing r- preceding another consonant[3].

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not usually written as the first part of a conjunct character in this class; but in Gujarati writing the characters ખ્ખ , khkha , ઠ્ઠ , ṭhṭha , and ધ્ધ , dhdha are often used. The combinations -nna and -mma are represented in some words by writing the anusvar over the character preceding ન or મ ; e.g.

સંમતિ	સંનિધિ		અન્ન
sammati	sannidhi	but	ann

The following examples illustrate Gujarati words in which two consecutive consonant characters, the first being akar, are realised

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 1.
3. See below, Class 3.iii.a.

in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

આગગાડી	ગામમાં	ભાવવું	બહેનનો
ag-gaḍii[1]	gam-mā[2]	bhav-vū[3]	bəhɛn-no[2]

Reading examples[4]

નક્કી લક્કડ ચોખ્ખો લચ્ચુ વચ્ચે બચ્ચું ઈચ્છા ગચ્છો સજ્જડ
ઉક્કતી દુક્કો ભટ્ટી ચિટ્ઠી ખડ્ડો પિત્તળ પત્થર મુદ્દલ[5] બુદ્ધિ[5]
ઓધ્યો અન્ન ચપ્પુ બબ્બે હિમ્મત રમ્મત ઐલ્લો હાંલ્લી હિસ્સો

Class 2. Two vargiiy characters joined.

The characters of this class occur for the most part in Sanskrit and other loanwords. Those which are most frequently used in writing Gujarati are given below, in the same groups as the characters given in the Sanskrit section[6].

i.

ક્ત	ક્ક	પ્ત	પ્પ	બ્દ
-ktə	-tkə	-ptə	-tpə	-bdə

ii. Most of the characters corresponding to those of this group in the Sanskrit section, under ii.a., are written in literary Gujarati, representing homorganic nasal consonants. This method of representing nasal consonants preceding vargiiy characters is generally used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords. An alternative method, representing nasal consonants of each class by writing the anusvar on the preceding character, has been described above[7]. Of the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b., only જ્ઞ, jɲə and ત્ન, -tnə occur in Gujarati. The character જ્ઞ is not calligraphically a conjunct character and is often

1. Compound word. 2. Noun with suffix. 3. Verbal form.
4. For transcription, see p.169. 5. The second character in these words is formed from the Devanagari character for də ; Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i.
6. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.2. 7. See above, Ch.2,3.i.b.

included in the syllabary. In Gujarati dictionaries words beginning with જ્ઞ are placed after words beginning with જ્ઞ . જ્ઞ is often realised as gyə .

iii. Some of the characters of this group occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

ક્મ	ગ્ન	ઘ્ન	ત્મ	દ્મ	પ્ન
-kmə	-gnə	-ghnə	-tmə	-dmə	-pnə

iv. Of this group, only ન્મ , -nmə , occurs in Gujarati, though ઙ્મ , -ŋmə and ણ્મ , -ɳmə may occur in learned loanwords in a literary text.

The following examples illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in the same way as conjunct characters: શક્તિ ʃəkti; શકતી ʃək-tii[1]; ગુપ્ત gupt; આપતો ap-to[1]

Reading examples[2]

મુક્તિ ભક્તિ તત્કાલ ચમત્કાર ગુપ્ત તત્પર શબ્દ યત્ન લગ્ન રુક્મિણી જન્મ રઙ્ગ સુન્દર પન્ચ આરમ્ભ પરન્તુ સમ્બન્ધ જ્ઞાન

Class 3. Characters joined with entoeth characters.

i. Characters joined with following ય .[3]

All the characters of the Gujarati syllabary, except ઽ and ઋ occur in this class. Many of the characters occur in verbal forms in which the suffix યો , and other forms of this suffix, are added to the verbal base by joining the character of the suffix with the final character of the base.

---

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.169.
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.i.

Reading examples[1]

ક્યારે શક્યો ખ્યાલું નાખ્યો લાગ્યું સુધ્યું સીંચ્યો પુછ્યો
જ્યારે ખોન્યું સૂઝ્યું છુટ્યો ઊઠ્યું પડ્યો કાઢ્યો ભણ્યો
જીત્યો ત્યાં આપ્યું વિદ્યા શોધ્યો મધ્યે માન્યો ન્યાય પ્યારે
આપ્યું હાંફ્યો દળ્યું યોજ્યું ગપ્યું સૂર્ય કર્યો બોલ્યો આપ્યું
ભાગ્યું અવશ્ય પીરસ્યું મનુષ્ય કલું મળ્યું નિકળ્યો અદૃશ્ય

ii. Characters joined with following વ .[2]

Only a few of the Gujarati characters are combined with વ , and these occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. The realisation of a final əkar consonant character in some compound words formed with the words વાલા , vala and વાર , var , illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in the same way as conjunct characters of this class; e.g.

પક્વાન્ન	અઠવાડિયું	ડાકવાલા	સોમવાર	બુધવાર
pəkvann	əṭh'vaḍiyũ	ḍak'vala	som'var	budh'var

Reading examples[3]

સત્ત્વ પૃથ્વી સર્વ ઈશ્વર[4] વિશ્વાસ સ્વભાવ
સ્વપ્ન દ્વેષ ધ્વનિ તત્ત્વજ્ઞાન

iii. Characters joined with preceding ર્ or following ર .

a. ર્ preceding another character.[5]

These conjunct characters are formed by placing a stroke known as રેફ , reph , above the character before which ર્ is to be realised as the first of two or more consecutive consonants. The place of

---

1. For transcription, see p.169.
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.ii.
3. For transcription, see p.169. see Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.
4. For the character શ્ર , ʃə ,
5. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.iii.

this stroke on Gujarati characters, whether əkar or written with vowel signs, corresponds with the place of the stroke on the Devanagari characters, and the order of writing the strokes of characters with reph is the same as the order described in the Sanskrit section[1]. The characters of this class which occur in Gujarati are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in the same way as conjunct characters written with reph are realised:

કર્તા	કરતા	ધર્મ	ઘરમાં	વર્ણ	નિસરણી
kərta	kər-ta[2]	dhərm	ghər-mã[3]	vərɳ	nisər'ɳii

Reading examples[4]

તર્ક મૂર્ખ વર્ગ અર્જિત ગર્જના વર્ણન પૂર્ણ વર્તન અર્થ
વિદ્યાર્થી નિર્દય અર્ધું અર્પણ ધર્મ દર્મિયાં ખર્વ પૂર્વે હર્ષ

b. ર following another character.

These characters are formed by writing a short diagonal stroke either against the upright stroke of a character, or below a rounded character.[5] Two characters similar to the Devanagari characters are used in forming these conjunct characters: દ for də , and શ for ʃə .[6] The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Gujarati, mostly in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

Reading examples[7]

ક્રમ રાત્ર ચંદ્ર સમુદ્ર પ્રેમ પ્રાણી ત્રણ ત્રીજું શુક્રવાર
શ્રમ શ્રાવણ આગ્રહ ત્રાંબું ઈંગ્રેજી નમ્ર પ્રમાણે ભ્રમર

---

1. See Sanskrit,Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.a.Calligraphy. 2.Verbal form.
3. Noun with suffix. 4. For transcription, see p.169.
5. Cf.Sanskrit,Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.b. 6. ibid.,Ch.2,1.i. and iii.
7. For transcription, see p.169.

iv. Characters with preceding ્લ or following લ.[1]

The characters of this class which are used in writing Gujarati are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

a. ્લ preceding.

Characters with preceding ્લ are not usually written in Gujarati except in a few Sanskrit loanwords. Some words are written either with a conjunct character or with separate characters, such as બલ્કે, bəlke , or બલકે, bəl'ke.

In representing colloquial speech forms in modern Gujarati, the character લ્હ is sometimes written for લ્હ, as in લ્હેર, lher , for લ્હેર, ləher , and other similar words.

b. લ following.

Characters combined with following લ occur mainly in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in the same way as conjunct characters of this class:

બિલ્કુલ	વળગણી	બદ્દલી	આમલી
bil'kul	vəl'gəṇi	bəd'lii	am'lii

Reading examples[2]

ફાલ્ગુન કલ્પના કોલ્હો કલ્હઈ સ્વલ્પ શિલ્પ

પ્રલ્હાદ શ્લોક ક્લેશ ક્લાસ ગ્લાસ સ્લેટ

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iv.a. and b.
2. For transcription, see p. 169.

Class 4. vərgiiy characters joined with preceding or following uusm characters.

i. vərgiiy characters joined with શ , ષ or સ .[1]

a. શ્ , ષ્ or સ્ preceding a vərgiiy character.

The characters of this class which occur in Gujarati, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are illustrated by the examples given below. The formation of the characters is similar to the formation of the Devanagari characters of this class, using the form શ્ર [2] for શ્ર , and using the form ચ્ચ [3] for ચ when combined with શ્ર .

b. ષ or સ following a vərgiiy character.

Only a few of the Gujarati characters occur in this class. Those which occur are illustrated in the examples below. The character ક્ષ , kʂə , is not calligraphically a conjunct character and is often included in the Gujarati vərṇəmala.[4] Words beginning with this are placed in Gujarati dictionaries after words beginning with જ્ઞ .

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar , in the same way as conjunct characters:

નુકસાન	નાસતો	ભેંસનો	દિવસમાં
nuk'san	nas-to[5]	bhɛ̃s-no[6]	divəs-mã[7]

The character સ્હ is written in some words for સહ to represent the pronunciation in modern Gujarati of such words as સહેલ, səhɛl (સ્હેલ), and સહેજ, səhɛj (સ્હેજ).

---

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.a. and b. 2. ibid., Ch.2,1.iii.
3. ibid., Ch.2,1.i. cə-vergəh. 4. Cf.note on ક્ષ , under Cl.2.ii.b.
5. Verbal form. 6. Noun with suffix. 7. Noun with particle.

Reading examples[1]

a. મઝકરી પશ્ચિમ અશ્મા પશ્ચાત્તાપ આશ્ચર્ય દુષ્ટ સ્પષ્ટ
પુષ્કળ દુષ્કર્મ રાષ્ટ્ર વસ્તુ રસ્તો પુસ્તક શાસ્ત્ર સ્ત્રી
સ્થળ સ્થિતિ તિરસ્કાર સંસ્કૃત સ્મરણ રાસ્તે

b. પરીક્ષા રક્ષણ અક્ષર લક્ષ્મણ કૃષ્ણ અપ્સરા ઈન્સાફ

ii. ્હ preceding or following anunasik ('nasal') characters[2].

a. ્હ્ preceding.

Two characters occur with preceding ્હ્ , in the Sanskrit loan-words બ્રાહ્મણ , brahmaṇ , and ચિહ્ન , cihn

b. ્હ following.

The characters which occur with following ્હ are illustrated in the examples given below. The characters ન્હ and મ્હ are sometimes written to represent the tendency to aspiration in some words in colloquial speech.

Reading examples[3]

ન્હાવું સામ્હે [સામે] તમ્હે [તમે]

Gujarati prose passage[4]

જોડણી શાસ્ત્રપૂત હોય, બહોળી શિષ્ટ રૂઢિને અનુસરતી હોય, એ બધું જેટલું આવશ્યક છે તેટલું જ, અથવા તેના કરતાંયે, જેવી હોય તેવી પણ જોડણી બહુજનમાન્ય અને નિશ્ચિત થઈ જાય, એ વધારે આવશ્યક છે. આજે અંગ્રેજી ભાષાની જોડણી બધી રીતે શાસ્ત્રશુદ્ધ છે એમ તો કહેવાય જ નહિ; કેટલીયે બાબતમાં

1. For transcription, see p.169.
2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.ii.
3. For transcription, see p.170.
4. Sārtha Joḍṇikosh, by Maganlāl Prabhudās Desāi, 4th ed. 1949, p.16, pub. Navajivan Prakāshan Mandir, Ahmedabad.

એ ઢંગધડા વગરની છે. પણ તે પ્રજામાં સંગઠન તથા તાલીમ-બદ્ધતા હોવાને લીધે ત્યાં જોડણીમાં અરાજકતા ફેલાવા પામી નથી. અંગ્રેજી ભાષાની જોડણી સર્વમાન્ય થઈ ચુકી છે, તેથી જોડણીની બાબતમાં બધે એકધારું લખાણ જડી આવે છે. એક વાર અરાજકતામાંથી વ્યવસ્થા ઉત્પન્ન થઈ ગઈ એટલે પછી સુધારા કરવા જ હોય તો તે કામ પ્રમાણમાં ઘણું સહેલું થઈ જાય છે.

સુધારાનો પ્રવાહ માન્ય વિકલ્પોની મર્યાદામાં જ વહી શકે છે. વખત જતાં વિકલ્પોમાં અમુક જાતની જોડણી જ વધારે રૂઢ થાય છે અને બીજા વિકલ્પો અવમાન્ય ન હોય તોપણ વપરાશને અભાવે કાલગ્રસ્ત થઈ જાય છે અને ખરી પડે છે.

Transcription of Reading Examples

Chapter 2.

1.i. nə chə jə ɖhə

ghən pəg nəkh gəj cəɖ məʈh kəkh bhəɳ chəʈh ɖhəg
jhəʈ ghəɖ dhən tək thəɖ dəm bən phəʈ jəɖ pəɳ

bədən pəkəɖ jhəɖəp mədəd cəmən phəʈək təgəɖ gəmən
jəməɳ bəgəɖ nəgəd dhəmək dəpəʈ tənəkh bhəjən pəʈhən

dhəɖ'pəɳ bhəʈ'kəɳ cək'mək jhəʈ'pəʈ bəɖ'chəʈ gəj'kəɳ

1.ii. rəth pər ləkh ghər khəl bər rəj rəv ləg vəy
yəv ləy chər jhəl vər rəɖ kəl cəy bhər jəy

ləcək chələr vərədh jhərəɳ bhərəɖ vəkhət rətən tərəph
rəvəɖ vərəd ləgəɳ yəvən cərək pələkh pəvən bhərəɳ

kəl'tər ləg'bhəg pəɖ'tər ləɖ'kəɳ tər'təj dəph'tər

1.iii. rəs ʃəʈh səɖh ʃəɳ həs dəʃ yəʃ sər ʃət

ləsəɳ hələk sərəs hərəkh ʃəpəth səməy hərəɳ phəɳəs

səm'jəɳ ʃər'bət sər'kəʈ kəs'rət hər'kət vəkət'sər

phəl dəl həl bələd dhəvəl kəməl pər'vəl həl'kəʈ

2.i. a e ao eo

is uun ek ap eɖh rɳ aj əv̆th
uucək iyəl uuth eʈh əv̆sədh ogh ubhəɖ iiʃ
əy̆ɖ məu ləii dəii gəii jəiie dəiie ləiie

2.ii. ke pəy̆ səv̆ che ja ghii te ca je bhuu dho jii

ʃeʈh roj ʈhiik duudh lok ruup ciij drɖh hit jay
god lav nəhi bəhu məne pəchii aje uubho uge
apo rsi rtu səv̆e teo bhaii chiie juo
bəy̆rii goʟo varu pəy̆so muke rajii pelo divo krpa viṣe
niʃaʟe ujaɳii ruupiyo tabedarii hoʃiyarii bhaioe

p.149. ek'ʈha ap'ɳe bək'rii nək'ʃo pog'lii aʟ'su kəs'bii
pay'lii jəm'rukh pay'dəl koʈ'val guj'ratii kəsəb'cor

chetər chet're chetər-vii pəkəɖ pək'ɖo pəkəɖ-vo
pəsər pəs'riine pəsər-vii mok'lii mokəl-vii

3.i. ʃũ hũ kə̃ii bhɔ̃y phɛ̃k khɛ̃c sãj ũugh sĩic bhɛ̃s
bãdh jhãkh tevãj mãdũ pəhɔ̃c vĩʈɪi thaũ lĩbũ

ii. anənd jəntu vəsənt məɳɖ əndər kənjus əmba səmp

Chapter 3.

Class 1.

nəkkii ləkkəɖ cokkho ləggu vəcce bəccũ iccha gəccho səjjəɖ
ujjhətii chuʈʈo bhəʈʈii ciʈʈhii khəɖɖo pittəɭ pətthər muddəl buddhi
oddho ənnə cəppu bəbbe himmət rəyyət chello hãllii hisso

Class 2.

jukti bhəkti tətkal cəmətkar gupt tətpər ʃəbd yətn
ləgn rukmiɳii jənm rəŋg sundər pənth arəmbh pərəntu
səmbəndh jɲan

Class 3.i.

kyare ʃəkyo khyalũ ṅakhyo lagyũ sughyũ sĩicyo puchyo
jyare khojyũ suujhyũ chuʈyo uuʈhyũ pəɖyo kaɖhyo bhəɳyo
jiityo tyã athyũ vidya ʃodhyo mədhye manyo nyay pyare
apyũ hãphyo dəbyũ thobhyũ gəmyũ suury kəryo bolyo avyũ
bhavyũ əvəʃy piir'syũ mənuṣy kəhyũ məɭyũ nikəɭyo ədrʃy

Class 3.ii.

səttv prthvii sərv iiʃvər viʃvas svəbhav
svəpn dveʃ dhvəni təttvəjɲan

Class 3.iii,

a. tərk muurkh vərg ərjit gərjəna vərɳən puurɳ vərtən ərth
vidyarthii nirdəy ərdhũ ərpəɳ dhərm dərmiyã khərv puurve hərṣ

b. krəm ratr cəndr səmudr prem praɳii trəɳ triijũ ʃukrəvar
ʃrəm ʃravəɳ agrəhə trãbũ iŋgrejii nəmr prəmaɳe bhrəmər

Class 3.iv.

phalgun kəlpəna kolha kəlhəii svəlp ʃilp prəlhad
ʃlok kleʃ klas glas sleʈ

Class 4.i.

a. məʃkərii pəʃcim cəʃma pəʃcattap aʃcəry duṣʈ spəṣʈ
puṣkəɭ duṣkərm raṣʈr vəstu rəsto pustək ʃastr strii sthəɭ
sthiti tirəskar səɱskrt smərəɳ rast

b. pəriikṣa rəkṣəɳ əkṣər ləkṣməɳ krṣɳ əpsəra insaph

Class 4.ii.

nhavũ samhe (same) təmhe (təme)

Gujarati prose passage

joɖəɳii ʃastrəpuut hoy, bəhoɭii ʃiʂt ruuɖhine ənusərətii hoy, e bədhũ jeʈ'lũ avəʃyək che teʈ'lũ j , əthəva tənə kər'tãye, jevii hoy tevii pəɳ joɖəɳii bəhujənəmany ane niʃcit thəii jay, e vədhare avəʃyək che. aje əŋgrejii bhaʂanii joɖəɳii bədhii riite ʃastrəʃuddh che ɛm to kəhɛvayə j nəhi; keʈ'liiye babət-mã e ɖhəŋgədhəɖa vəgər-nii che. pəɳ te prəja-mã səŋgəʈhən tətha taliim'bədhəta hovane liidhe tyã joɖəɳii-mã ərajəkəta phelava pamii nəthii. əŋgrejii bhaʂanii joɖəɳii sərvəmany thəii cukii che, tethii joɖəɳiinii babət-mã bədhe ek'dharũ ləkhaɳ joɖii ave che. ek var ərajəkəta-mãthii vyəvəstha utpənn thəii gəii eʈ'le pəchii sudhara kərva j hoy to te kam prəmaɳ-mã ghəɳũ səhɛlũ thəii jay che.

sudharano prəvahə many vikəlponii məryada-mã j vəhii ʃəke che. vəkhət jətã vikəlpo-mã əmuk jat-nii joɖəɳii j vədhare ruuɖh thay che ane biija vikəlpo əvəmany nə hoy təpəɳ vəpəraʃ-ne əbhave kaləgrəst thəii jay che ane khərii pəɖe che.

BENGALI SECTION

PREPARED IN COLLABORATION WITH
MISS G. M. SUMMERS
formerly Lecturer in Bengali in the
School of Oriental and African Studies
University of London

CHAPTER 1

ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Bengali script, as a writing system, is based on the same syllabic system as the Devanagari script. The characters of the syllabary are arranged in the same way, and though the majority of the characters seem at first sight to be very different in line and form from those of the Devanagari script, some of them are recognisably of the same origin.

The same system of notation is used in this section for the transcription of the Bengali script as that used in the Sanskrit section, and in the transcription of the modern languages which are written with the Devanagari script. As in the Devanagari script, each character of the Bengali script represents a syllable consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the first vowel of the vowel series. This vowel, in Bengali as in Sanskrit, is usually referred to in English textbooks as the 'inherent' vowel. In referring to a consonant character of the Bengali syllabary, or in reciting the syllabary, the inherent vowel is, however, the vowel which is usually represented by the phonetic symbol 'ɔ'. In order to preserve uniformity in the systematic transcription throughout this work the symbol 'ə' is used in this section to represent the inherent vowel, and as there are various other differences in the quality of vowel sounds used in realising the Bengali characters, the systematic transcription

in this section is accompanied, both in the examples given in the text and in those given for practice in reading, by a phonetic transcription. The phonetic transcription is given in brackets to distinguish it from the systematic roman transcription.

In the roman syllabary given below, the syllables are represented in the table in the systematic transcription used in the Sanskrit syllabary. For the transcription of certain additional characters which do not occur in the Sanskrit syllabary, and for the phonetic transcription, the following symbols, not included in the All-India Roman Notation, are used in this section:-

i. Systematic roman notation.

ṛə and ṛhə , for the retroflex flapped consonants, represented in the script by modified forms of the characters corresponding to ḍə and ḍhə[1].

ý ə , for the modified form of the character corresponding to yə , and realised in various ways, described in Chapter 2.[2]

ṃ , for the modifier referred to as the ənusvar.[3]

ii. Phonetic notation.

(ɔ), for the realisation of the inherent vowel in most contexts.

(æ), for the realisation, in certain contexts, of the vowel transcribed in roman notation as a ; and for the realisation, in special contexts, of the vowel transcribed as e .

(˜), superscribed to vowel symbols, to represent nasalisation.

(ˈ), to represent the realisation of the inherent vowel, medially, as an ə-glide, or as zero-vowel, in certain positions.

---

1. See Ch.2,1.i. 2. ibid., 1.ii. əntəsthə ý ə. 3. See Ch.2,3.ii.

Bengali Syllabary in Roman Notation

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro-flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə[1]	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə[1]	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		ŋə	(ɲə)[2]	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə[3]	rə	lə	və[4]
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə[5]	sə	
Aspirate			hə				

VOWELS	ə a	i ii	u uu	e əў	o əў	r[6]
MODIFIERS	Nasal - ŋ and ~ Aspirated - h					

Notes on the syllables marked 1 - 6 in the above table:

1. The characters corresponding to these two syllables are modified to represent the medial and final realisation of these characters as flapped sounds, written as ɽə and ɽhə in the transcription.
2. The character corresponding to this syllable is not written as a single character in Bengali, but only in combination with other characters, illustrated below in Chapter 3.

3. As the character corresponding to this syllable is always realised in the same way as the character corresponding to jə , a modified form of it is used to represent yə in certain contexts. The use of this modified character, referred to as 'ontostho ýə', and transcribed in this work as ýə , is discussed in Chapter 2.2.ii.
4. The character corresponding to this syllable is the same as the character corresponding to the syllable bə .
5. The character corresponding to this syllable occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.
6. This vowel, syllabic r , occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The characters of the Bengali script are arranged in the same groups as the syllables given in the above table, and the terms used by Bengali grammarians in describing the characters and their realisation in reading are similar to those given in the Sanskrit section. These terms are Sanskrit loanwords, and when they are realised in reading, the same conventions are observed as those used in modern Bengali reading from a text. They sound, therefore, somewhat different from the Sanskrit terms, though when the Sanskrit and the Bengali terms are placed side by side, they are recognisable as loanwords. The following examples illustrate the similarities and differences between the two sets of terms, in script and in systematic and phonetic transcription:

Sanskrit			Bengali		
	अक्षरम्	əkṣərəm		অক্ষর	əkṣərə, (ɔkkhor)
	विरामः	virəməh		বিরাম	virəmə (biram)
	वर्गः	vərgəh		বর্গ	vərgə (bɔrgo)
	अन्तःस्थ	əntəhsthə		অন্তস্থ	əntəsthə (ɔntostho)
	ऊष्मन्	uuṣmən		উষ্ম	uuṣmə (uʃʃɔ)
	व्यञ्जनम्	vyəɲjənəm		ব্যঞ্জন	vyəɲjənə (bɔnjon)

Bengali Calligraphy.

In the modern teaching of Bengali writing, ordinary pens are generally used, and consequently little attention is paid to the balance or direction of the broad and thin strokes. Formerly, however, writing was taught with a broad pen such as that described in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section[1]. Though the relative position of the broad and thin strokes is not so strictly adhered to in writing Bengali as in writing the Devanagari script, the general direction of them is the same as that illustrated in those notes.

There is a conventional order of writing the strokes in each character; the first stroke in writing most of the characters begins at the top left hand side and the last stroke brings the pen to the top right hand side so that it is possible to pass straight on to the beginning of the next character. If a character has a horizontal head-stroke, or is completed with a short horizontal stroke at the top right hand side, this stroke is written last and carried on to the first stroke of the next character in a word; when such a stroke is placed on the left hand side of the character, it is written first. This head-stroke is referred to as the 'matra'. The pen should be lifted as rarely as possible in writing a character, or consecutive characters. All the characters are written below the line, if ruled paper is used, and the regular alignment is by the top of the characters.

The printed forms of the characters, given in the tables in Chapter 2, are not usually used in manuscript. The corresponding cursive forms of the characters, used in writing, are given below the

1. See Sanskrit section, Introduction.

printed forms, with notes on calligraphy when necessary. The examples given below illustrate the general order of strokes in writing the characters, some typical forms, and the small but important differences to be noted between characters which have some similarity of form.

1. ব। ‾ ‹ ব য। ২ য য

ট। ৮ ঢ ট উ। ৬ ড উ

2. ব র ক রু রূ ঝ য ষ ফ ঘ

ঢ ঢ় ট চ ঠ এ ক্র ত্র ঞ ত্র

ড উ ঙ জ ঙ হ ই থ ঈ খ

ত অ ত্ত ক্ত ন্ত ন্থ ম্ভ ণ্ড গু শু

ব্দ ঝ দ্ধ ব্ধ ব্ব ল হু ত্থ ত্র ণ্ড

ঙ্ক ম্ন হ্ম ক্ষ ক্ষ্ণ ক্ষ্ম

CHAPTER 2

CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The Bengali characters are described in this chapter under the same headings as the Devanagari characters in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Signs, and Modifiers.[1]

1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: vərgiiy̆ə (borgiyo) characters, əntəsthə (ɔntostho) characters, and uuṣmə(uʃʃõ) characters. In the form in which they are given in the syllabary, they are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by the first vowel of the vowel series, represented in the roman table as ə . The characters are described as 'əkar' (ɔkar), that is, 'ending in ə '. Each character is referred to as the syllable which it represents, with the addition of the particle '-kar'; for example, kə-kar, tə-kar, pə-kar. When a character is to be realised without the inherent vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, a short diagonal stroke is written at the foot of the character. This mark is called 'həsəntə' (hɔʃonto)[2], and characters written with this mark are referred to thus: ক্ is 'kə-e həsəntə' (kɔ-e hɔʃonto)[3], গ্ is 'gə-e həsəntə' (gɔ-e hɔʃonto), and so on. In reading words, əkar consonant characters are realised in various

---

1. Compare Sanskrit section, Chapter 2.
2. 'ending in a consonant'. Cf. Sanskrit Ch.2.1. viraməh and hələntə.
3. 'həsəntə in kə'. See also below, under i.

contexts with zero-vowel, but the hɔsɔntɔ is not usually written with such characters in modern Bengali, as it is assumed that the reader can recognise from a knowledge of the spoken language which characters are to be realised in this way. In some verbal forms[1], however, the hɔsɔntɔ is often written with characters that are realised with zero-vowel, and it is used in writing Sanskrit texts in Bengali script.[2]

The absence of the hɔsɔntɔ in a consonant character cannot, however, be taken to indicate that the character is to be realised with the inherent vowel. Although the writing system of Bengali has much in common with the Sanskrit writing system, owing to its origin, the use of a system so closely related to the Sanskrit system for writing a modern spoken language makes necessary a number of conventions both of spelling and of realising the characters in reading. Some of these conventions concern the realisation of ɔkar consonant characters. The Bengali consonant characters, as they are given in the syllabary, are realised, as described above, in the same way as the Sanskrit characters. When they occur in words, however, they are realised in various ways: as consonants with the inherent vowel, as consonants with zero-vowel, or as consonants with a glide-vowel. Further, the inherent vowel, represented in the systematic roman notation by ɔ , is realised in some contexts as (ɔ) and in others as (o). This varying realisation of ɔkar consonant characters depends upon certain factors of which a general indication is given in the notes following the first table of consonant characters[3] and in special notes in the discussion

1. These verbal forms are discussed below, under ii.
2. Rules recognised by the University of Calcutta concerning the writing of the hɔsɔntɔ are given in the Bengali dictionary চলন্তিকা . (cɔlɔntika), appendix, page 38, sub-section 4.
3. See below, under i., Realisation of ɔkar consonant characters.

of vowel characters and vowel signs[1]; but in reading a Bengali text the realisation of these characters in many words can be determined only by a knowledge of the spoken language.

1. Characters of the vərgiiyə group (বর্গীয়)[2]

This group consists of twentyfive consonant characters representing syllables consisting of an initial plosive consonant followed by the inherent vowel. These characters fall into five classes, বর্গ , vərgə[3], according to the five positions of articulation. The table of these five classes may be compared with the Sanskrit table of vərgiiyə consonant characters.

ক - বর্গ kə-vərgə[4]	ক kə	খ khə	গ gə	ঘ ghə	ঙ -ŋə
চ - বর্গ cə-vərgə	চ cə	ছ chə	জ jə	ঝ jhə	ঞ -ɲə
ট - বর্গ ʈə-vərgə	ট ʈə	ঠ ʈhə	ড ɖə	ঢ ɖhə	ণ -ɳə
ত - বর্গ tə-vərgə	ত tə	থ thə	দ də	ধ dhə	ন nə
প - বর্গ pə-vərgə	প pə	ফ phə	ব bə	ভ bhə	ম mə

1. See below, under 2.ii. 2. (bərgiyo). Cf.Sanskrit, Ch.2. 1.i. 3. (bərgo).Cf.Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i. 4. (kə-bərgo, etc.).

The characters given in this table are those used in printing. The corresponding cursive forms, used in handwriting, are given below. The cursive forms differ from the printed forms mainly in an adaptation of the order and direction of strokes that makes it possible to join each character to the following character by means of a small head-stroke[1]. The order of strokes is given with any character in which this order is not evident from the form of the character itself.

kə-vərgə:	ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঙ
cə-vərgə:	চ	ছ	জ জ	ঝ	ঞ
ṭə-vərgə:	ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ণ ণ
tə-vərgə:	ত	থ	দ	ধ ধ	ন
pə-vərgə:	প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম

Calligraphy of characters:

kə ‾ ঽ ক chə চ ছ ছ jə ঙ জ জ
jhə ৲ ঝ ঝ ṭhə ঢ ঠ ঠ pə ৮ প প
dhə ৻ ব ধ or ৻ ধ ধ

Calligraphy of words:

নদ টক খড় পথ বম তট ঘন জড় তত
ফটক কতক জগৎ কচমচ গড়গড় চটপট

Characters written with the həsəntə: ক্ , k- , ঙ্ , ŋ- , ম্ , m- . The həsəntə is not written with ত , tə . The consonant t- without a following vowel is represented as ৎ . This character is referred to as খণ্ড ত , khəɳḍə tə(khɔɳḍo tɔ).[2]

---

1. See notes on calligraphy, Ch.1. 2. (khɔɳḍo tɔ), 'broken tə' .

The character ঙ , ŋə , does not occur initially, but it occurs medially and finally in a few Bengali words and is often written with the hasanta.

The character ঞ , ɲə , occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, in combination with other characters[1].

The character ণ , ɳə , is realised as (nɔ), except when it is combined with characters of the ʈə-vərgə[2]. It occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and never initially.

The character ফ , phə , is usually realised as a bi-labial fricative. When stressed, it is usually realised as a plosive.

The character ভ , bhə , is usually realised as a plosive when initial, but as a bi-labial fricative when medial or final.

The two characters ড , ɖə and ঢ , ɖhə occur only initially. Modified forms of these characters occur medially and finally. These characters, ড় , ɽə and ঢ় , ɽhə are described as ডএ শূন্য ড় , ɖə-e ʃuunyə ɽə[3]. They are usually placed at the end of the vərɳəmala, being regarded as separate characters from ড and ঢ .

Realisation of the inherent vowel in əkar consonant characters.[4]

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in various ways, according to the position of the character in a word, and in special phonetic contexts, follows certain general rules. Some of these contexts can be defined only by a detailed phonetic study of the spoken language, and numerous exceptions occur. The rules stated below will, however, give some general guidance for reading.

---

1. See Ch.3,3.Class 2.ii.b. 2. ibid., Class 2.ii.a.
3. (ɖə-e ʃunno ɽə), 'in ɖə a dot, ɽə', i.e. the ɽə written by adding a dot to ɖə . 4. Further notes on the realisation of əkar consonant characters in special contexts are given below, under iii., and under 2.ii.

a. Initial ɔkar consonant characters.

An initial ɔkar consonant character is usually realised with the vowel (ɔ), as in গচ্ , gɛc(gɔc), কব্ , kɔb(kɔb), unless the character is followed by a final nasal consonant character, when the initial ɔkar character is usually realised with the vowel (o), as in জন্ , jɔn(jon).

b. Medial ɔkar consonant characters.[1]

i. Medial ɔkar consonant characters in words of three characters, of which the final is ɔkar, are usually realised with the vowel (o), as in কদম্ , kɔdɔm(kɔdom), নগদ্ , nɔgɔd(nɔgod)[2].

ii. Medial ɔkar consonant characters as the second character of a four character word, are often realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, as in চকমক্ , cɔkɔmɔkə(cɔk'mɔk)[3]. Two consecutive ɔkar consonant characters are not usually both realised with the vowel (ɔ).

c. Final ɔkar consonant characters.

i. Final ɔkar consonant characters are realised in many words with zero-vowel, as in চট , cɔʈə(cɔʈ), কব , kɔbə(kɔb).[5]

ii. Final ɔkar consonant characters are realised in some words with the vowel (o). This realisation occurs in words of certain

---

1. This note refers to words consisting of ɔkar consonant characters only; further notes are given below, under 2.ii., for the realisation of these characters in words in which vowel signs occur.
2. See S.K.Chatterji, ভাষাপ্রকাশ বাঙ্গালা ব্যাকরণ , bhaṣaprɔkaʃə baŋgala vyakɔraṇə, pp.32ff.; pub. Calcutta University, 1939.
3. For the method used in the phonetic transcription of medial and final characters in words to which these notes refer, see above, Ch.1., and below, after note c.
4. For the realisation of ɔkar characters in compound words, see note c. below.
5. Final characters realised with zero-vowel are not usually written with the hosonto. This mark is used in notes a. and b. to simplify the transcription of examples occurring before the realisation of final characters is discussed.

grammatical categories, summarised later[1]; and in certain other words, usually words of two characters, which can be recognised only by a knowledge of spoken Bengali. e.g. কত , kətə(kɔto). তম , təmə(tomo). When such words occur as the first part of a compound word, the final character, though medial in the compound word, is still realised in this way.[2]

The word মত , mətə , is realised in two ways, the same written form representing two words of different meaning in the spoken language: মত , (mɔt), 'idea', 'opinion', or 'purpose', and মত , (mɔto), 'similar', 'like'.

As the realisation of əkar consonant characters with the vowels (ɔ) and (o) varies not only in the contexts described above, but also in some other contexts which are described later[3], and some which cannot be defined by any general statement, the following system is used in the phonetic transcription of examples in this work:

a) Initial əkar consonant characters are transcribed with (ɔ) or with (o), according to note a. above.

b) Medial əkar consonant characters realised as a syllable with the inherent vowel are transcribed with (ɔ) or with (o), according to note b. above; those realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide are transcribed thus: (k'),(p').

c) Final əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel are transcribed as final consonants; those which are realised with the vowel (o) are transcribed with (o), according to note c.[4]

1. See below, under iii. 2. For examples of such compound words, see below, under ii. Reading examples.
3. Further notes on the realisation of əkar consonant characters are given below, under iii. and under 2.ii. Vowel Signs.
4. Variations from these general rules may occur in certain words, but such variations are outside the scope of this work.

Reading examples[1]

1. One character words, realised as consonants with the vowel (ɔ).

ক ছ ন প দ ঢ জ ট ত খ থ

2. Two character words.

i. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

নদ নখ টক পদ খড় ঝড় ঘট পথ তট

ii. Final characters realised with (o):

কত বড় ঘন পট গত পত জড় নত তত

iii. Initial characters realised with (o), final with zero-vowel:

বন জন মন কণ

3. Three character words; realised as in note b.i. and c.i.

ফটক কতক জগৎ ঘটক

4. Four character words; realised as in note b.ii. and c.i.

চটপট কটকট কচমচ ঢকমক খটখট

থকথক গড়গড় টপটপ তকতক ধপধপ

ii. Characters of the əntəsthə group(অন্তস্থ)[2]

There are four characters in this group, associated with four of the vərgə, as shown in the roman syllabary[3]. They may be compared with the Devanagari characters of the corresponding group[4].

য	র	ল	ব
yə	rə	lə	və

Cursive forms: য র ল ব

Words: রথ যত বছর কলম মলম ফলকর

1. For transcription, see p.226. 2. (ɔntostho).
3. See roman table, Chapter 1. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.

The character য , transcribed in the roman notation as yə , is realised as (jɔ). It corresponds, as the first character in this group, to the əntəsthə character য , yə , in the Sanskrit syllabary. It is referred to as 'əntəsthə yə'(əntəstho jɔ), to distinguish it from জ , jə , referred to as 'vərgiiýə jə'(borgiyo jɔ). The semi-vowel corresponding to the Sanskrit character য is represented in Bengali by a modified form of this character. য় , referred to as 'əntəsthə ýə'(əntəstho ɔ). This character is realised in various ways according to its position and phonetic context, and is discussed later in a special note[1].

The character ব , transcribed in the roman notation as və , is realised as (bɔ). It corresponds, as the fourth character in this group, to the əntəsthə character ব , və , in the Sanskrit syllabary. It is referred to in this work as 'əntəsthə və'(əntəstho bɔ) in order to distinguish it, in discussion, from the third character in the pə-vərgə, 'vərgiiýə bə'(borgiyo bɔ). Although vərgiiýə bə and əntəsthə və are the same in form and in realisation, the character is included in the syllabary in both the vərgiiýə and the əntəsthə groups, and Sanskrit loanwords which are written in the Devanagari script with initial ব , və , are placed in Bengali dictionaries in a separate section following words with initial ল , lə . A knowledge of Sanskrit loanwords is needed in order to recognise which words are to be found among words beginning with vərgiiýə bə and which among those beginning with əntəsthə və . In the more modern Bengali dictionaries the tendency is to place all words beginning with this character in one section, after words beginning with ফ , phə .

1. See note on əntəsthə ýə , under 2.ii. below.

əntəsthə və is, however, recognised as different from vərgiiýə bə when it is combined with another character.[1]

Reading examples[2]

1. Of the əntəsthə characters, only য occurs as a word.
2. Two character words.

   i. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

   কল ঘর মল পর বল রক দল রথ ফল

   ii. Final character realised with (o):

   যত

3. Three character words.[3]

   বদল গলদ মলজ নগর গলন

4. Four character words.[4]

   খরতর ফলকর কলরব

iii. Characters of the uuṣmə group(উষ্ম)[5]

This group of characters includes three characters realised as fricative consonants with the vowel (ɔ), and one character realised as an aspirate with the vowel (ɔ). The characters are associated with four of the vərgə, as shown in the roman syllabary.[6] They may be compared with the Devanagari characters of the same group.[7]

শ	ষ	স		হ
ʃə	ṣə	sə	and	hə

Cursive forms: শ ষ স হ

Words: ষ্ট শব সহজ ঘনরস জলপথ

1. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.
2. For transcription, see p.226.
3. See above, notes b.i. and c.i. c.i. and ii.(compounds).
4. See above, notes b.ii. and
5. (uʃʃɔ̃).
6. See Ch.1.
7. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

The three characters শ , ষ and স are realised as (ʃɔ), except when they are combined in a conjunct character with certain other characters[1]. They are described, for instance, in spelling, as 'taləvyə ʃə'(talobbo ʃɔ),'muurdhənyə ʂə'(murdhonno ʃɔ) and 'dəntyə sə' (donto ʃɔ). ষ occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The character হ , hə , is the last character of the Bengali syllabary. Two other characters, ক্ষ , kʂə and জ্ঞ , jɲə , each representing syllables consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel (ɔ), are often placed after the consonant characters in the əkʂərəmala. They do not, however, properly belong to the syllabary, and in this work they are discussed later, in the appropriate classes of conjunct characters[2].

Reading examples[3]

1. Of the uuṣmə characters only শ occurs as a word.

2. Two character words.

   i. Final character realised with zero-vowel:

   শব সব দশ সখ

   ii. Final character realised with (ɔ):

   শত সম হত হর

3. Three character words[4]

   সহর সহজ সরল হলফ

4. Four character words[5]

   i. খসখস টসটস তলতল ঢলঢল

   ii. সহচর সমতল ঘনরস ঘনকফ মদকট জলকর

---

1. See Ch.3.3.Cl.4.i.a. 2. ibid. Cl.2.ii.b. and Cl.4.i.b.
3. For transcription, see p.226. 4. Realised as in notes b.i. and c.i. above. 5. Words in line i. realised as in notes b.ii. and c.i.; words in line ii. realised as note c.ii. (compounds).

Realisation of əkar consonant characters in verbal forms.

The realisation of medial and final əkar consonant characters in certain grammatical categories is made according to the general rules given below. No comprehensive statement can be made which covers all categories, but these rules give some guidance in reading from the script. The only complete guide is a knowledge of the spoken language.

a. Verbal bases ending in an əkar consonant character.

i. Verbal bases without suffixes.

The final əkar consonant character of a verbal base is realised with zero-vowel; e.g.

বল	কর	চল	বক
bələ(bɔl)	kərə(kɔr)	cələ(cɔl)	bəkə(bɔk)

The form of the verb described grammatically as the 'second person singular of the present imperative, inferior form' is written in the same way as the base, and realised in the same way. The final character of this form of the verb is often written with the həsəntə; e.g.

বল	বল্	কর	কর্	বক	বক্
bələ or bəl(bɔl)		kərə or kər(kɔr)		bəkə or bək(bɔk)	

ii. Verbal bases with suffixes.

When a suffix beginning with, or consisting of, a consonant character is added to a verbal base, the final character of the base is realised with źero-vowel or with an ə-glide. Examples of this realisation are given below, under note b.

The grammatical forms described as the 'second person of the simple present tense' and the 'second person of the present imperative' are written in the same way as the verbal base; but

are distinguished from the base in reading aloud by the realisation of the final character with the vowel (o). Examples:

বল , bələ(bɔlo), করু , kərə(kɔro), পড় , pəɽə(pɔɽo)

This realisation occurs with similar grammatical forms of all verbs which have only ekar characters in the base. In the 'second person' of the 'future imperative' in which the first ekar character is realised with (o), the final character is written with the vowel sign of o[1]. In the verb বস , bəsə , the initial character in both grammatical forms is realised with (o); e.g. বস , (bɔʃo).

The realisation of the initial ekar character of a verbal base with the vowel (o) is sometimes shown by writing the mark ' after the character, as in কর , kərə(kɔro), কর' , kəro(koro)[1].

b. Verbal forms with suffixes consisting of ekar consonant characters.

The verbal suffixes ত , tə(to), ব , bə(bo) and ল , lə(lo) are added to verbal bases to form various 'tenses'[2]. In these verbal forms the final ekar character of the base is realised as described in note a.i., and if the base consists of two ekar consonant characters the initial character also is realised with the vowel (o). Examples:

করব	করত	করল
kərə-bə(kor'bo)	kərə-tə(kor'to)[3]	kərə-lə(kor'lo)[3]

1. See below, 2.ii, note a.ii. 2. Suffixes of the tenses described as 'future simple' (bo), 'past habitual' (to) and 'past indefinite' (lo). 3. In colloquial Bengali the sequence র্ল , -rl-, arising from the addition of a suffix beginning with ল , or the sequence র্ত , -rt- arising from the addition of a suffix beginning with ত , to a verbal base ending in র , are realised respectively as (-ll-) and (-tt-), as in the verbal forms করল , (kollo) and করত , (kotto). This realisation would be made in reading from a Bengali text written in the colloquial style. See further notes on the realisation of verbal forms under 2.ii, and later in Ch.3,3.C1.1.

2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.

Vowel characters are written in Bengali, as in Sanskrit, to represent syllables consisting of a vowel only, and vowel signs are added to consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels in the series given below. These characters may be compared with the Devanagari vowel characters and vowel signs, given in the Sanskrit section.[1]

i. Vowel Characters.

অ	আ	ই	ঈ	উ	ঊ
ə	a	i	ii	u	uu
	ঋ	এ	ঐ	ও	ঔ
	r[2]	e	əў	o	əў

Cursive forms:

অ আ ই ঈ উ ঊ ঋ এ ঐ ও ঔ

অর আম ইষৎ ঈশ উত এক ওদ ঔষধ

The superscribed strokes in these characters are written last, starting from the matra and writing upwards.

The characters অ , ə , and আ , a , are referred to as স্বরী অ, svərii ə (ʃori ɔ) and স্বরী আ, svərii a (ʃori a)[3]. The other vowel characters are referred to as the vowel which each represents.

The characters ই and উ are described as হ্রস্ব , hrəsvə[4], 'short', and the characters ঈ and ঊ are described as দীর্ঘ , diirghə[5], 'long'. The 'short' and the 'long' vowels are realised in reading with very little distinction of quality, but certain words

1. See Sanskrit,Ch.2,2.i. and ii. 2. 'syllabic r'; see Ch.1.Vowels.
3. svərə, 'vowel'; svərii ə , 'vowel-character ə '. For the realisation of the first vowel character in certain contexts, see special notes under ii. below. 4. (hrɔʃʃo). 5. (dirgho).

are always written with the 'short' vowels and others always with the 'long' vowels. Examples of pairs of words of which the meaning is distinguished by the writing of the 'short' or the 'long' vowel, and in which a corresponding distinction must be made in reading, are given later.[1]

The vowel ঋ , syllabic r , occurs only in some Sanskrit loan-words. The vowel characters ৠ , syllabic rr , ঌ , syllabic l , and ৡ , syllabic ll , are used in printing Sanskrit texts in Bengali script. The character ঋ is realised as (ri).

The character এ , e , is usually realised as (e), but varies in certain contexts which are described below, under Vowel Signs.

The character ঐ , əў , is realised as the diphthong (oi), and the character ঔ , əў , is realised as the diphthong (ou).

Reading examples[2]

1. Vowel characters only

আ ই উ এ ঐ ও ঔ

2. Vowel characters and əkar consonant characters

i. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

আট ইট উট আম ঋণ ঊন এর ওর ঈদ
ইস ইটল ইতর ঈষৎ উতর উদক এতৎ
এলম ওতন ঔষধ ঔরত ঔষণ

ii. Final characters realised with (o):

ঈশ ওড় অর অপ এণ ওঘ ওত ঔম ঈত অগ
ইত ইব উখ উত ঐক ওল ওষ

1. See below, under ii. Vowel Signs, Reading examples.
2. For transcription of examples, see p.227.

o

ii. Vowel Signs.

Vowel signs, corresponding to the vowel characters, are given below added to the consonant character ক . As the vowel ə is the inherent vowel of each of the consonant characters in the form in which they are given in the syllabary, there is no vowel sign corresponding to the vowel character অ .

কা	কি	কী	কু	কূ	কৃ	কে	কৈ	কো	কৌ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke	kəў	ko	kəў

Special forms of some of the characters with vowel signs:

গু	রু	রূ	শু	হু	হ্ব
gu	ru	ruu	ʃu	hu	hr

The vowel signs corresponding to the characters ঋ , ৠ and ঌ , used in writing Sanskrit, added to ক , are কৃ , কৄ and কৢ .

Vowel signs which are placed on the left side of the consonant character with which they are to be realised are written before the consonant character; other signs are added after the consonant character has been written. The order of writing the strokes in characters with vowel signs is illustrated in these cursive forms:

বশ তা মি সি দ্বী তী গে লে নৈ শৌ

বাবা ঘাস বেশী আবার অনেক আপনি বেড়াতে

রওনা সকালে শিখতে আমাদের তোমরাও দুজনেই

Characters with vowel signs are referred to in spelling thus: কে , (kɔ-e ekar), 'the sign of এ in ক '; গু , (gɔ-e hrɔʃʃo ukar). The sign of syllabic r is referred to as (rikar) or (riphola).[1]

1. For examples of spelling words, see below, end of Ch.3.

Reading examples[1]

চা থু সে গো কূ ঝি শী মৌ নৃ ছি

ওতু ঋষি আলো দাও যুই ঢেউ রুটি কৃপা গুরু

মোটা শিশু রূপা মানে হৃদি নীতি হুরী নৌকা

গোধূলি জীবিকা কুমারী দাগাবাজি কপোতিকা নিরুপাধি

Realisation of əkar consonant characters, and certain vowel characters in special contexts.

In reading Bengali words from the script, the realisation of əkar consonant characters in words which have vowel characters or vowel signs presents certain difficulties; and the realisation of some of the vowel characters and signs varies in special contexts, such as the occurrence of certain other vowels in following syllables. The notes given below provide some general guidance in reading from the script, but a knowledge of Bengali pronunciation is necessary for correct realisation of such words.

a. Realisation of əkar consonant characters.[2]

i. When an əkar consonant character occurs as the second character of a three character word preceding a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide;

e.g. আমরা বদলে ঝগড়া

amərа(am'ra) bədələ(bɔd'le) jhəgəɽa(jhɔg'ɽa)

টুকরি মামলা সামনে

ʈukəri(tuk'ri) mamələ(mam'la) ʃamənе(ʃam'ne)

1. For transcription, see p.227.
2. These notes complete the discussion of the realisation of əkar consonant characters; see above, notes given on pp.183 and 190.

When the final character of such words is əkar, the medial character is realised as described in previous notes . The following examples illustrate this realisation after an initial character with a vowel sign:

ভারৎ	পিতল	কেবল
bharət(bharot)	pitələ(pitol)	kebələ(kebol)

When an əkar consonant character occurs in a word of four or more characters, it is realised with ə , with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, according to its position in relation to characters with vowel signs. The following examples illustrate the varying realisation of these characters in different contexts:

কমবেশ	গোলযোগ	মারপিট
kəməbeʃə(kɔm'beʃ)	goləjogə(gol'jog)	marəpiṭə(mar'piṭ)

শতকরা	সমজদার
ʃətəkəra(ʃɔt'kɔra)	səməjədarə(ʃomoj'dar)

ii. The realisation of the final əkar consonant character of verbal bases has been described above[1]. The following verbal forms are further illustrations of this realisation:

পারব	শুনল	আসত
parəbə(par'bo)	ʃunələ(ʃun'lo)	asətə(aʃ'to)

The suffixes in these forms may be written with the okar; e.g.

পারবো	শুনলো	আসতো
parəbo(par'bo)	ʃunəlo(ʃun'lo)	asəto(aʃ'to)

Similarly the forms in which the final character of the base are realised with (o) may be distinguished from the forms in which

the final character is realised with zero-vowel by writing this character with the okar; e.g.

কর	কর	করো	কোরো	কোরো
kərə(kɔr)	kərə(kɔro)	kəro(kɔro)	kərə(koro)	kəro(koro)
মার	মার	মারো	লেখ	লেখো
marə(mar)	marə(maro)	maro(maro)	lekhə(lekho)	lekho(lekho)

iii. When two words of different meaning are written in the same way and distinguished only by the realisation of the final əkar character of one of the words with (o), this realisation is often indicated by writing the okar, as in these pairs: কাল (kal), 'time', কাল (kalo) or কালো (kalo), 'black'; ভাল (bhal),'forehead', ভাল (bhalo) or ভালো (bhalo), 'good'.

b. The realisation of certain vowel characters and signs is affected by the occurrence of other vowels in following syllables.

i. The character অ , or the inherent vowel of an əkar consonant character, is realised as (o) when it is followed by one of the characters, or corresponding signs, for i , ii , u or uu .

e.g. অতি	ধনী	অতুল	সবুজ	
əti(oti)	dhənii(dhoni)	ətulə(otul)[1]	ʃəbujə(ʃobuj)	

When the character অ represents the negative prefix, however, the usual realisation of it as (ɔ) is not affected by the occurrence of one of these vowels in the following syllable; e.g. অধীর, ədhiirə(ɔdhir), অতুল , ətulə(ɔtul)[2].

iii. The character এ , or the corresponding sign, in initial position is often realised as (æ) unless it is followed by a

1. A proper name. 2. 'incomparable'.

character with the vowels i , ii , u or uu ; e.g.

বেলা	নেকরা	এমন	এমনি
bela(bæla)	nekəɽa(næk'ɽa)	emənə(æmon)	eməni(em'ni)
এক	একটা	একটী	একটু
ekə(æk)	ekəʈa(æk'ʈa)	ekəʈii(ek'ʈi)	ekəʈu(ek'ʈu)

The verbal form দেখে is realised in two ways. When it represents the form described grammatically as 'simple present, third person' it is realised as (dækhe). When it represents the form described as 'past participle', it is realised as (dekhe).

Reading examples, illustrating the notes given above.[1]

1. i. Final əkar characters realised with zero-vowel

তিন দুধ দূর নীল চোখ মেঘ শৃগাল মতালেব

ii. Final əkar characters realised with (o)

জুত তিত গূঢ় মৃগ ছোট দৃঢ় মৌন ষোল ধৌত মৃত

2. Medial əkar characters realised as described in note a.i.

চাকর সাহস পাথর পাগল কৌশল দেবর
তোমরা টুকরা কামরা চুপড়ি মুচকি তালপাত গগনভেলা

3. Verbal forms, realised as described in note a.ii.

লেখ্ লেখ থাক্ থাক জান্ জান জিতব জিতবো
শুনত শুনতো জাগল জাগলো ভিজত তুলব শুনল

4. əkar characters realised as described in note b.i.

বই কই খই নদী যদি যতি বলি বসি সলিল
চলিত সহিত জমিদার অভিধান গলিত পলিত
পলু পটু মধুর মরুৎ বলুক ফতুর বহুৎ

1. For transcription of examples, see p.227.

Realisation of the modified character য় , 'əntəsthə ý৯'.[1]

The character য় , referred to as 'əntəsthə ý৯(əntostho ɔ) is a modified form of the əntəsthə character য , yə . This modified character has been introduced into the Bengali script as a graphic device for representing sounds which cannot be represented by the əntəsthə characters য and ব , since in modern Bengali əntəsthə yə is realised by the same sound as vərgiiý৯ jə and əntəsthə və is realised by the same sound as vərgiiý৯ bə.[2]

The contexts in which this character occurs, and the realisation of it in reading, are illustrated in the following notes.

a. As the character য is realised in modern Bengali as (jɔ), a means of representing the Bengali equivalent of the semi-vowel yə which occurs in Sanskrit loanwords becomes necessary. Sanskrit loanwords which are written in the Devanagari script with the character य , yə , are written in Bengali with əntəsthə ý৯, and this character is realised in various ways, illustrated in the examples given below[3]:

i. য় realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide, as in

মায়িক	মায়ুর	নিয়ম	দায়ক
maý৯kə(mayik)	maý৯rə(mayur)	niý৯mə(niyom)	daý৯kə(dayok)
দয়া	মায়া	আয়োজন	
dəý৯a(dɔya)	maý৯a(maya)	aý৯jənə(ayojon)	

1. See above, under 1.ii. əntəsthə characters. 2. For a historical discussion of this character, see S.K.Chatterji, The Origin and Development of the Bengali Language, pub. University of Calcutta.
3. A detailed phonetic analysis is outside the scope of this work, and therefore this vocalic glide, the quality of which may vary according to the vowels preceding or following it, is represented in the phonetic transcription by (y) in the examples given in notes a., b. and c.

ii. য় realised finally as a vocalic glide of an e-like quality, as in

জয়	সময়	বিষয়	
joẏə(joy)	səməẏə(ʃomoy)	viṣəẏə(biʃoy)	
পরিচয়	দায়	কায়	রায়
pəricəẏə(poricoy)	daẏə(day)	kaẏə(kay)	raẏə(ray)

or realised as an intervocalic glide followed by the inherent vowel realised as (o), as in

দেয়	নেয়	পেয়	ধেয়
deẏə(deyo)[1]	neẏə(neyo)[1]	peẏo(peyo)	dheẏə(dheyo)
অজেয়	কমনীয়	বর্গীয়	
əjeẏə(ɔjeyo)	kəmənīẏə(komoniyo)	vərgiiẏə(borgiyo)[2]	

b. əntəsthə ẏə is written to represent the Bengali equivalent of certain diphthongs in loanwords from other modern languages, and is used in combination with other characters to represent the Bengali equivalent of initial characters combined with yə[3] in such loanwords:-

i. The realisation in modern Bengali of the vowel character ঐ , əẏ , is (oi). Loanwords from other languages in which the Devanagari equivalent of this diphthong occurs, or in which the character representing yə in these languages is realised with the preceding vowel as a diphthong, are written in Bengali with əntəsthə ẏə, as illustrated in the examples given below.

---

1. Compare this realisation with the words written in the same way in note c.ii. below.
2. The character র্গ represents -rg- . See Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.a.
3. See Sanskrit,Ch.3, Conjunct Characters, Class 3.i.

য় , ekar, realised medially as a front vocalic glide with an e-like quality, as in

পয়সা	পয়দা	কায়দা	জায়গা
pəẏəsa(pɔyʃa)	pəẏəda(poyda)	kaẏəda(kayda)	jaẏəga(jayga)
বয়স	পায়স		
vəẏəsa(bɔyʃ)	paẏəsə(payʃ)		

য় , ekar, realised medially as an intersyllabic vocalic glide, as in

কয়েদ	আয়েস	বয়েৎ
kəẏedə(koyed)	aẏesə(ayeʃ)	bəẏetə(boyet)

ii. antastha ẏə is written also in some English loanwords as a means of representing the Bengali pronunciation of the diphthongs in such words as 'chair', চেয়ার (ceyar), and 'care' কেয়ার (keyar).

iii. When the character য , yə , is combined with an initial consonant character in a conjunct character[1], it is realised as zero. Some loanwords used in modern Bengali are written in Hindi, in the Devanagari script, with initial conjunct characters of Class 3.i., that is, combined with the character representing yə . Such words, as loanwords in Bengali, are written in Bengali script with an initial ekar character followed by antastha ẏə, as in these words: পেয়ালা peẏala(peyala), পেয়ার peẏarə(peyar).

c. antastha ẏə is written in some words in order to avoid writing a vowel character in a medial or final position. This use of antastha ẏə occurs in words and in grammatical forms.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.i., and below, Ch.3,3.Class 3.i.

i. য় in words, realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide followed by the inherent vowel or the vowel represented by the vowel sign, as in

মেয়ে	কয়েক	ফতুয়া
meẏe(meye)	kɔẏekə(kɔyek)	phətuẏa(photuya)
শিয়র	শিয়া	পোয়াল
ʃiẏərə(ʃiyor)	ʃiẏa(ʃiya)	poẏalə(poyal)

ii. য় in grammatical forms, in which it is written medially with a vowel sign representing the vowel of a particle, when a particle consisting of a vowel only is added to a word ending in a vowel. The following examples illustrate this use of য় :

Verbal forms in which final য় , akar or ekar, is realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide after the vowel i and after the inherent vowel, which in this context is realised as (o); as in these forms which are described grammatically as 'past participles', occurring in the literary language -

বলিয়া	দেখিয়া	শুইয়া	গিয়া
boliẏa(boliya)	dekhiẏa(dekhiya)	ʃuiẏa(ʃuiya)	giẏa(giya)

and in these colloquial forms, described in the same way -

গিয়ে	দিয়ে	হয়ে	শুয়ে	পেয়ে
giẏe(giye)	diẏe(diye)	həẏe(hoye)	ʃuẏe(ʃuye)	peẏe(peye)

Verbal forms in which final য় is realised as a vocalic glide with an e-like quality, as in these forms which are described grammatically as 'present tense, third person' -

নয়	রয়	পায়	জানায়	বেরোয়
nəẏe(nɔy)	rəẏa(rɔy)	paẏa(pay)	janaẏa(janay)	beroẏe(beroy)

The verbal forms দেয় and নেয় are realised respectively as (dæy) and (næy).[1]

Noun forms in which the 'genitive' suffix এর , erə(er) is added to nouns ending in a vowel, and noun and pronoun forms in which the 'locative' suffix এ , e(e) is written as əntəsthə ý ə after a final vowel; əntəsthə ý ə realised as a vocalic glide –

মায়ের	ঝিয়ের	বউয়ের	দুইয়ের
maýerə(mayer)	jhiý́erə(jhiyer)	bəuý́erə(bouyer)	duiý́erə(duiyer)
পায়	থানায়	আমায়	তোমায়
paýə(pay)	thanaýə(thanay)	amaýə(amay)	tomaýə(tomay)

d. As the əntəsthə character ব , və , is realised as (bɔ) in modern Bengali, that is, in the same way as the vərgiiý ə character ব , bə , a graphic method of representing word structure involving the semivowel və in loanwords becomes necessary. This semivowel is represented in Bengali by writing the vowel character ও , o , followed by əntəsthə ý ə. This combination of characters is used in the following examples of loanwords, in which য় is realised as a back vocalic glide, transcribed here phonetically as (-v)

হাওয়া	পোয়া	ডাকওয়ালা	দেওয়ালি
haoý́a(haova)	poý́a(poova)	ḍakəoý́ala(ḍakovala)	deoý́ali(deovali)

This method of representing a back vocalic glide is used also in verbal forms in which a suffix beginning with (a) is added to a base consisting of one character, as in

হওয়া	যাওয়ান	পাওয়া
həoý́a(hɔova)	yaoý́anə(jaovano)	paoý́a(paova)

1. Compare the realisation of these forms with that of the two words written in the same way, given above in a.ii.

3. Modifiers.

Three modifiers are used in writing Bengali. These are marks added to characters to represent some modification of the syllable it represents. The first two modifiers represent nasalisation, and the third represents aspiration. These modifiers may be compared with the corresponding modifiers of the Devanagari script[1].

i. চন্দ্র-বিন্দু , cəndrə-bindu, and অনুস্বার , ənusvarə.

a. cəndrə-bindu[2]

When the mark ঁ is written above a character, the vowel of the syllable which the character represents is realised with nasalisation. This mark corresponds in form, though not in the way in which it is realised, with the mark called ənunasikə in Sanskrit.

cəndrə-bindu added to vowel characters:

অঁ	আঁ	ইঁ	ঈঁ	উঁ	ঊঁ	এঁ	ঐঁ	ওঁ	ঔঁ
ə̃	ã	ĭ	ĭi	ũ	ũu	ẽ	ə̃y̆	õ	ə̃v̆

cəndrə-bindu added to the consonant character ক with vowel signs:

কঁ	কাঁ	কিঁ	কীঁ	কুঁ	কূঁ	কেঁ	কৈঁ	কোঁ	কৌঁ
kə̃	kã	kĭ	kĭi	kũ	kũu	kẽ	kə̃y̆	kõ	kə̃v̆

Characters written with cəndrə-bindu are referred to in spelling thus: (ʃori a-e cəndrobindu),(kə-e cəndrobindu hrəʃʃo ikar).

Reading examples[3]

এঁর ওঁর আঁক হাঁ চিঁ চোঁ টুঁ তাঁ ধাঁ রোঁ ভুঁই

যুঁই তুঁষ ঠাঁই চাঁচ ছেঁক ভাঁড় ঘোঁট কুঁদল বেঁধে

জাঁকা দাঁড়ি খোঁপা ধুঁধুল পঁচিশ হাঁকাড়ি

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i. and ii.
2. (cəndro-bindu). Final əkar consonant characters
3. For transcription, see page 228. realised with zero-vowel.

b. ənusvarə[1]

The term ənusvarə is used in Bengali to refer to the mark ং , realised as (ŋ). It may occur finally, or medially, written as an alternative to the həsəntə form of the character ঙ , ŋə . These examples illustrate the writing of the ənusvar:

এবং	সিং	আংটি	ইংরাজ	সাং
ebəm(eboŋ)	simˌ(ʃiŋ)	amˌʈi(aŋʈi)	imˌraje(iŋraj)	samˌ(ʃaŋ)

Some words may be written either with the ənusvar or with ঙ্ :

রং	রঙ্	বাংলা	বাঙ্লা
rəmˌ(rɔŋ) or	rəŋ(rɔŋ)	bamˌla(baŋla)	or baŋla(baŋla)

The ənusvar occurs in many Sanskrit loanwords preceding a character of the əntəsthə or the uuṣmə group, and especially in words which have the Sanskrit prefix written in Devanagari as सम् , səm . The realisation of the ənusvar in Bengali, as -ŋ , may be compared with the various ways of realising the ənusvar of the Devanagari script in the same Sanskrit loanwords in other parts of India.[2]

Examples:	সংযোগ	səmˌyogə(ʃɔŋjog)	সংরাগ	səmˌragə(ʃɔŋrag)
	সংবাদ	səmˌvadə(ʃɔŋbad)	অংস	əmˌʃə(ɔŋʃo)
	সংসার	səmˌsarə(ʃɔŋʃar)	সিংহ	simˌhə(ʃiŋho)

Reading examples[3]

নং টং গাং অংশ দংশন শংসা ঠংঠং বাংশ
সংঘাত সংবিৎ পাংশু সুতরাং অবতংস নংশুক
সংযমন বংশধর সংশোধন সাংঘাতিক কংসহা

---

1. (onuʃʃor). In the transcription of examples, in roman notation, the ənusvar is transcribed as mˌ in order to distinguish it from the character ঙ , transcribed as ŋ . 2. Cf.Sanskrit,Ch.2,3.i.c.
3. For transcription of examples, see p.228.

ii. বিসর্গ, visorgo.[1]

The sign ঃ written after a character represents aspiration following the vowel of the syllable with which the character is realised. It occurs mainly in Sanskrit loanwords, and is written in a few Bengali exclamations to express emphasis. When the visorgo is written with a final character, it is realised as aspiration after the final syllable. When it occurs medially, it is realised as the doubling of the following character, as in দুঃখ, duhkho(dukkho).

Examples:

বাঃ	উঃ	পুনঃ	নিঃশেষ	অতঃপর
bah(bah)	uh(uh)	punoh(punoh)	nihʃeṣo(niʃʃeʃ)	otohporo(otoppor)

Reading examples[2]

অরুঃ	সরঃ	পুনঃ	সহঃ	নিঃসুখ	অতঃপর
শতায়ুঃ	নভঃসদ্	অচেতাঃ	দুঃসময়	বাঃসদন
নিঃকারণ	হবিঃশেষ	বনৌকাঃ	নিঃকাসন	দুঃসহ

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The complete syllabary, arranged in the traditional order, is given on the following page. The Sanskrit vowel characters ঋ, ৠ and ঌ are not included in the syllabary. This table, with the order of characters with vowel signs given above under Vowel Signs[3], shows the order in which the characters are placed as the initial characters of words in dictionaries. Characters with the onusvar precede the same characters with the condro-bindu, and both precede characters without the onusvar or condro-bindu but followed by another consonant character.

1. (biʃorgo). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii.
2. For transcription, see p.228.
3. See above, under 2.ii.

অ আ ই ঈ উ ঊ

এ ঐ ও ঔ

অঁ অং অঃ

ক খ গ ঘ ঙ

চ ছ জ ঝ ঞ

ট ঠ ড ঢ ণ

ত থ দ ধ ন

প ফ ব ভ ম

য র ল ব

শ ষ স হ

5. Numerals

The Bengali numerals are written thus:

১	২	৩	৪	৫	৬	৭	৮	৯	১০
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	10

6. Punctuation

In Bengali prose writing the end of a sentence is marked by an upright stroke of the same height as the upright stroke of a character. This mark is referred to as দাঁড়ি, dāṛi. Other punctuation marks are used as in English. This system is illustrated in the prose passage at the end of this section[1]. The system of punctuation used in Bengali verse is the same as that used in Sanskrit[2], but in much modern verse the prose system is used.

---

1. See end of Ch.3. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii. Reading examples.

CHAPTER 3

CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised consecutively, without an intervening vowel. Characters formed in this way are referred to in Bengali as যুক্তাক্ষর , yuktakṣara[1].

1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Bengali conjunct characters are constructed to some extent by the same methods as the Devanagari conjunct characters, described in the Sanskrit section[2]. These methods vary according to the form of the characters to be combined.

i. The character which is realised as the second consonant may be subscribed to the first character; e.g.

ক্ক	ন্ত	প্ত	হ্ম
kkə	ntə	ptə	hmə

ii. The characters to be joined may be written consecutively, without the usual intervening space; e.g.

ঙ্ঘ	চ্ছ	দ্গ	ধ্ব
ṅghə	cchə	dgə	dhvə

iii. If the first character has a stroke which can be used as part of the second character, the characters may be joined as in these examples:

দ্দ	ব্দ	ন্দ	ব্জ
ddə	bdə	ndə	bjə

---

1. (juktakkhor). 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.1.

iv. The form of either the first or the second character may be modified in order to make possible the writing of the two characters as one conjunct character. These modifications vary according to the form of the characters to be joined; e.g.

ত্ত	থ্থ	ক্ত	ণ্ঠ	ষ্ঠ	স্ত
tto	ttho	kto	ṇṭho	ṣṭho	sto

v. The characters ত , য , and র , have special forms which are used when they are combined with other characters; e.g.

ৎক	ৎপ	ক্য	ত্য	র্ক	ক্র
tko[1]	tpo	kyo	tyo	rko	kro

vi. If any characters cannot be combined by any of these methods, the realisation of them without an intervening vowel is indicated by writing the first character with the hosanto.

The modified forms of some of the characters, written as the second part of a conjunct character, are referred to as the syllable which the full character represents and the particle ফলা , phola (phola); e.g. যফলা , yo-phola(jophola). বফলা , vo-phola(bophola). The modified forms of the characters ন , ম , র , ল , used in forming conjunct characters, are also referred to in this way.[2]

2. Contexts and Realisation of Conjunct Characters.

Conjunct characters in Bengali occur in the following contexts:

i. In Bengali words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from modern languages; e.g.

বড্ড	পত্তন	মুণ্ড
boḍḍo(boḍḍo)	pottɔn(pottɔn)	muṇḍo(muṇḍo)

1. See above, Ch.2,1.i. khaṇḍo to. 2. For spelling terms used in referring to conjunct characters, see end of this chapter.

ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Bengali, or words used in the literary language only; e.g.

পন্থা	শব্দ	রাষ্ট্র
pəntha(pɔntha)	ʃəbdə(ʃɔbdo)	raʂṭrə(raʂṭro)

In the classes of conjunct characters given below, under 3., conjunct characters are included which are used only in writing Sanskrit. Some of these characters do not occur in Bengali texts, though words including them are found in Bengali dictionaries.

iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

খঞ্জর	মাষ্টার	চর্ব্বি
khəɲjərə(khɔnjor)	maʂṭarə(maʂṭar)	cərbbi(corbbi)

Conjunct characters are realised as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. The realisation of əkar conjunct characters in various positions follows in general the rules already given for the realisation of əkar consonant characters. In describing the realisation of individual characters, the inherent vowel is phonetically transcribed as (ɔ), as in the transcription of the characters of the syllabary.

The realisation in modern Bengali of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling. This realisation of such characters in words of three or more characters, and in verbal bases with suffixes added, has been illustrated above[1]. The realisation of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel in such contexts often results in the speaking of two consecutive consonants in a way similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Examples of Bengali words in

1. See above, Ch.2.2.ii.

which the realisation of separate consonant characters is similar to that of conjunct characters are given below with the various classes.

3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Bengali.

The Bengali conjunct characters are arranged in this chapter in the same four classes as the Devanagari characters given in the Sanskrit section . All the characters given in the Sanskrit section have equivalents in the Bengali script, and all the examples given in that section can be written in Bengali script. The reading examples given with each class of conjunct characters include some learned loanwords which may be found in literary texts.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.[1]

These characters represent syllables consisting of a 'doubled' consonant followed by a vowel.

ক্ক	ক্খ	গ্গ	গ্ঘ		চ্চ	চ্ছ	জ্জ	ঝ্ঝ	
-kkə	-kkhə	-ggə	-gghə	--	-ccə	-cchə	-jjə	-jjhə	--
ট্ট	ট্ঠ	ড্ড	ড্ঢ	ণ্ণ	ত্ত	থ্থ	দ্দ	ধ্ধ	ন্ন
-ṭṭə	-ṭṭhə	-ḍḍə	-ḍḍhə	-ṇṇə	-ttə	-tthə	-ddə	-ddhə	-nnə
প্প	প্ফ	ব্ব	ভ্ভ	ম্ম					
-ppə	-pphə	-bbə	-bbhə	-mmə					

য্য		ল্ল			শ্শ		স্স		
-yyə	--	-llə	--		-ʃʃə	--	-ssə	--	

The character ণ্ণ is realised as (nnɔ). The character য্য is realised as (jjɔ), or when it is akar, as (jjæ). The character স্স , which occurs only in loanwords, is realised as (ssɔ).

1. Compare Sanskrit, Ch.3.3. Class 1.

When a suffix with an initial consonant character is added to a verbal base with a final ɔkar consonant character, the realisation of the consecutive characters in the verbal form is similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class. Examples:

করত , kərətə(kotto), পারলাম , parəlamə(pallam).[1]

Reading examples[2]

পক্ক কক্‌খট পগ্‌গড় কচ্চর ইচ্ছা লজ্জা কুজ্ঝটিকা
ঠাট্টা উড্ডীন ষন্নবত উত্তর উত্থান চৌদ্দ শুদ্ধ কান্না
ছপ্পর ছাব্বিশ উম্মেদ শয্যা ফুল্ল মনশ্শান্তি হিস্সা
বিষন্ন সাহায্য সদ্দার তিব্বৎ পরিচ্ছন্ন বৃদ্ধ চিত্ত

Class 2. Two vərgiiyə characters joined.[3]

These characters occur mainly in Sanskrit loanwords. The series of Devanagari characters of this class, given in the Sanskrit section, includes many characters which occur in the joining of words in compounds, in phrases and in sentences in a Sanskrit text. The characters occurring in a Sanskrit text printed in Bengali script can be recognised with a knowledge of Sanskrit; but it is beyond the scope of this work to include all the possible combinations of characters in this class. The characters given below may occur in a Bengali literary text.

i.	ক্ত	ৎক	ৎখ	গ্দ	দ্গ	গ্ধ	দ্ঘ
	-ktə	-tkə	-tkhə	-gdə	-dgə	-gdhə	-dghə
ii.	ৎপ	ৎফ	প্ত	দ্ব	ব্দ	ভ্ড	ব্ধ
	-tpə	-tphə	-ptə	-dbə	-bdə	-dbhə	-bdhə

1. These forms are sometimes written, for instance, in dialogue, with conjunct characters. Cf. notes in Ch.2,1.iii.
2. For transcription, see p.228. 3. Cf. Sanskrit,Ch.3,3.Cl.2.i.-iv.

ii.a.

ঙ্ক	ঙ্খ	ঙ্গ	ঙ্ঘ	ঞ্চ	ঞ্ছ	ঞ্জ	ঞ্ঝ
-ŋkə	-ŋkhə	-ŋgə	-ŋghə	-ɲcə	-ɲchə	-ɲjə	-ɲjhə
ণ্ট	ণ্ঠ	ণ্ড	ণ্ঢ	ন্ত	ন্থ	ন্দ	ন্ধ
-ɳṭə	-ɳṭhə	-ɳḍə	-ɳḍhə	-ntə	-nthə	-ndə	-ndhə
ম্প	ম্ফ	ম্ব	ম্ভ	Special ukar form			ন্তু
-mpə	-mphə	-mbə	-mbhə				ntu

The nasal consonant of the kə-vərgə, in the first group above, may be represented alternatively by the ənusvar[1]. The character ঞ , joined with a character of the cə-vərgə, is realised as (n-). The character ণ , joined with a character of the ṭə-vərgə, is realised as (ɳ-).

b.

ক্ষ্ণ	জ্ঞ	ন্ত	দ্ন
-cɲə	jɲə	-tnə	-dnə

The character ক্ষ্ণ occurs only in the Sanskrit loanword যাচ্ঞা , yacɲa, realised as (jacna) or as (jaciŋga).

The character জ্ঞ is realised initially as (gɔ); and medially as (gɔ), with nasalisation of the following vowel, as in জ্ঞান jɲanə(gæn), and আজ্ঞা , ajɲa(aggæ). This character is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the əkṣərəmala after the consonant characters[2].

iii.

ক্ম	গ্ন	গ্ম	ঘ্ন	ত্ম	দ্ম	প্ন
-kmə	-gnə	-gmə	-ghnə	-tmə	-dmə	-pnə

The character ত্ম , tmə, is realised as (ttɔ), often with nasalisation of the following vowel, as in আত্মা , atmə(attä).

The character দ্ম , dmə, is realised as (ddɔ), with nasalisation

1. See above, Ch.2,3.i.b. 2. Words beginning with this character are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with জ্ঞা .

of the following vowel, except in words in common use, such as পদ্ম , pədmə(pɔddõ, pɔddo).

iv. ঙ্ম -ŋmə ণ্ম -ɳmə ন্ম -nmə ম্ন -mnə

The following examples illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ɔkar, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class:

Verbal forms কাঁদব কাঁপত শুনতাম
kãdəbə(kãd'bɔ) kãpətə(kãp'to) ʃunətamə(ʃun'tam)

Other words পানমরিচ পাতকুয়া হাতছানি
panəməricə(pan'moric) patəkuẏa(pat'kuya) hatəchani(hat'chani)

Reading examples[1]

i. শক্তি বাগ্দান উদ্গমন উদ্ঘাত অদ্ভুত শব্দ উৎপথ দগ্ধ গুপ্ত উৎকর উৎফুল্ল উৎপন্ন চমৎকার উৎখাত ষট্কোণ

ii. অলঙ্কার শঙ্খ সঙ্গত সঙ্ঘটন অঞ্চল লাঞ্ছনা অঞ্জলি ঝঞ্ঝাট কণ্টকী কণ্ঠা পাণ্ডা ঢুণ্ঢিত শান্তি পন্থী নিন্দা অন্ধ সম্পদ লম্ফ অম্বর সম্ভব জ্ঞান জিজ্ঞাসা পত্নী পঙ্ক্তি

iii শব্মা সংলগ্ন আত্মা গ্না বাগ্মী

iv. উন্মগ্ন জন্ম নিম্নোক্ত বাঙ্ময় ষণ্মাস

Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsthə characters.

i. Characters joined with following য .[2]

All the characters of the Bengali syllabary occur in this class except ঙ , ŋə and ঞ , ɲə . These conjunct characters are formed by adding the stroke ্য , referred to as yəphəla(jɔphola) to another character, thus: ক্য , kyə , ত্য , tyə , প্য , pyə , শ্য , ʃyə .

1. For transcription, see p.228. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.i.

Conjunct characters may be formed by combining three characters; e.g.

ক্ত্য , ktyə, ন্ত্য , ntyə, ন্ধ্য , ndhyə, ষ্ম্য , tmyə.

Characters written with yəphəla are realised in various ways; and the occurrence of a character combined with yəphəla in certain contexts affects the quality of some of the vowels.

a. Realisation of characters with yəphəla.

When an initial character is written with yəphəla it is realised as as zero-yəphəla and the vowel of the syllable, e.g.

ন্যূন	ধ্যেয়	জ্যোতিষ
nyuunə(nun)	dhyeýə(dheyo)	jyotiṣə(jotiʃ)

When a medial or a final character is written with yəphəla, the character is realised as the doubling of the consonant represented by the character with which yəphəla is written[1]; e.g.

বাক্য	রাজ্য	পুণ্য
vakkyə(bakko)	rajyə(rajjo)	puṇyə(punno)

b. Realisation of vowels affected by yəphəla.

An əkar character preceding a character with yəphəla is realised with the inherent vowel as (o), e.g.

অন্য	সভ্য	কল্য	তালব্য
ənyə(onno)	səbhyə(ʃobbho)	kəlyə(kollo)[2]	taləvyə(talobbo)

If an initial character with yəphəla is əkar, the vowel is realised as (æ), unless the əkar character is followed by an ikar or an iikar character, when it is realised as (e)[3]; e.g.

ব্যথা	ব্যথী	ব্যঞ্জন	ব্যতীত
vyəthə(bæthə)	vyəthii(bethi)	vyəṇjənə(bænjon)	vyətiitə(betito)

---

1. For examples of medial characters, see below, under note b.
2. Cf. the verbal form করল , kərələ(kollo), Ch.2,1.iii.note b.
3. Cf. note on realisation of vowel characters and signs, Ch.2,2.ii.b.

If a character with yəphəla is akar, the vowel is realised as (æ), e.g.

ন্যায়	ধ্যান	ব্যাখ্যান	কন্যা
nyaẏə(næy)[1]	dhyanə(dhæn)	vyakhyanə(bækkhæn)	kənya(konnæ)

In the word উদ্যোগ , udyogə, a Sanskrit loanword in which the conjunct character arises from the joining of the prefix উৎ , ut- , with the word যোগ , yogə , the medial character is realised as (djo), the word being realised as (udjog)[2]. This realisation may be contrasted with the realisation of the character with yəphəla in বিদ্যা , vidya(biddæ). Note also সহ্য , səhyə(ʃojjho).

Reading examples[3]

বাক্য খ্যাত যোগ্যতা চ্যবন চ্যুত জ্যোতি জ্যেঠা ট্যাঁ ঠ্যাং ট্যাঁড়া পুণ্য যত্যাচার অত্যুত্তম অত্যয় সত্য ভৃত্যের মিথ্যা গদ্য দ্যুমনি অবাধ্য ধ্যান ধ্যেয় ন্যায় ন্যূন উপন্যাস প্যান রৌপ্য অভ্যাস ম্যাও কল্যান তালব্য ব্যঞ্জন শ্যাম ষনুষ্য স্যদ সহ্য উদ্যান সন্ধ্যা সংখ্যেয়

ii. Characters with following ব .[4]

This class of conjunct characters consists of characters combined with əntəstha və, corresponding with the Devanagari characters joined with the əntəstha character ব , və . These conjunct characters occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. When ব , or its modified form, occurs as the second part of a conjunct character, it is referred to as vəphəla(bophola). It is written with some characters in the full form, joined to the preceding character by the matra, as in ধ্ব , dhvə, হ্ব , hvə ; or in the modified form, added to the foot of a

1. Cf. the verbal form realised as (næy) in the note on əntəstha ẏə on p.203. 2. Also realised as (uddog).
3. For transcription, see p.229. 4. Cf.Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.

character, as in ক্ব , kvə , ত্ব , tvə , শ্ব , ʃvə . The form of the character র্ব , rvə , is discussed later, under iii.a.

The following are examples of conjunct characters formed by combining three characters: ত্ত্ব , ttvə , দ্ধ্বা , ddhvə , ক্ত্ব , ktvə.

In the conjunct characters of this class, əntəsthə və is regarded as a separate character from vərgiiẏə bə, although in the syllabary the two characters are the same. Words beginning with an initial conjunct character of this class are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with conjunct characters formed by combining a consonant character with a following র .

When vəphəla is written with an initial character, it is realised as zero; e.g.

স্বামী	জ্বাল	ত্বক্ত	দ্বাদশ
svamii(ʃami)	jvalə(jal)	tvəktə(təkto)	dvadəʃə(dadoʃ)

When vəphəla is written with a medial or a final character, it is realised as the first part of the conjunct character doubled, with zero-realisation of vəphəla, as in the following examples:

অন্বহ	ঈশ্বর	বিশ্ব	কণ্ব
ənvəhə(onnoho)	iiʃvərə(iʃʃor)	viʃvə(biʃʃo)	kənvə(konno)

The character হ্ব , hvə , is realised as a v-glide followed by a bilabial aspirate, as in বিহ্বল , bihvələ(bivvhol).

In Sanskrit words, used as learned loanwords in literary Bengali, a prefix ending in a həsəntə consonant character may be added to a word with initial əntəsthə və. In the conjunct character which results, and in the conjunct characters which arise from the joining

of two words in a compound, vəphəla is realised as (b-); e.g.

উদ্বিগ্ন সদ্ব্যবহার ঋগ্বেদ

udvignə(udbignə) sədvyəvəharə(ʃɔdbəbohar) rgvedə(rigbed)

The words উদ্বান , udvanə(uddan), and বিদ্বান , vidvanə(biddan) are exceptions to this general rule.

The realisation of vəphəla, illustrated by the above examples, results in a similarity of realisation of two or more words which are the same in the spoken language and distinguished only in writing; e.g. ধ্বনী , dhənii, and ধ্বনি , dhvəni, realised as (dhoni),[1]

শিকার , ʃikarə, and স্বীকার , sviikarə, realised as (ʃikar),[2]

শর , ʃərə, সর , sərə, and স্বর , svərə , realised as (ʃɔr)[3]

Reading examples[4]

ক্বচিৎ পক্ব উচ্ছ্বাস জ্বাল ত্বরা তত্ত্ব ধ্বংস বিদ্ব

ঈশ্বর স্বচ্ছ অন্বেষণ স্বদেশ সরস্বতী শ্বাস জিহ্বা

iii. Characters joined with preceding র্ or with following র .

a. র্ preceding another character.[5]

Conjunct characters of this class are formed by writing a stroke referred to as রেফ , rephə (reph), above the character before which র্ is to be realised.

This stroke is placed at the right hand side of any other superscribed stroke, and is the last stroke of the character to be written. e.g.

র্ক র্চ র্ট র্ত র্প র্কী র্কে র্কৌ

-rkə -rcə -rṭə -rtə -rpə -rkii -rkɛ -rkəʊ

The characters গ , চ , জ , ত , দ , ধ , ম , য and ব

1. 'master' and 'sound'. 2. 'hunting' and 'agreement'.
3. 'arrow', 'cream' and 'voice'. 4. For transcription, see p.229.
5. Cf.Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.iii.a.

are often written in their doubled form with rephɔ[1]; e.g.

র্ত , rttɔ, র্গ্গ , rggɔ, র্ম্ম , rmmɔ, র্ব্ব , rvvɔ

In some words, including verbal forms, the realisation of ɔkar consonant characters with zero-vowel in certain positions leads to the realisation of র্ before another consonant character in a way similar to the realisation of rephɔ, as in these examples:-

Verbal forms: পারত , parɔtɔ(par'to, patto), মরল , marɔlɔ(mollo)

Other words: দরবার , dɔrɔbarɔ(dor'bar), সরকার , sarɔkarɔ(ʃɔr'kar)

Reading examples[2]

তর্ক মূর্খ বর্গীয় দীর্ঘ বার্চ্চ মূর্চ্ছন সর্জ্জু বর্ণ কর্ত্তব্য
পদার্থ কর্দ্দট অর্দ্ধ দুর্নাম সর্প সমর্পণ ধর্ম্ম মর্য্যাদা দুর্লভ
বহির্ভুত সর্ব্ব মর্শন মর্ষণ গর্হণ আর্য্য বিসর্গ সর্দ্দার

b. র following another character.[3]

Conjunct characters of this class are formed by subscribing the stroke referred to as rɔphɔla(rɔphola) to a consonant character. The characters with rɔphɔla which occur in Bengali, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are illustrated by the reading examples given below.

The following characters illustrate the calligraphy of characters with rɔphɔla, with some special forms; and some conjunct characters formed by joining three characters:

ক্র	গ্র	জ্রা	ত্র	দ্র	প্র	ভ্র	শ্র	হ্র
krɔ	grɔ	jrɔ	trɔ	drɔ	prɔ	bhrɔ	ʃrɔ	hrɔ
দ্রু	ধ্রূ	শ্রু	ক্রু	ঙ্গ্র	ন্দ্র	ক্ত্র	ন্ধ্র
dru	dhruu	ʃru	tru	-ngrɔ	-ndrɔ	-ktrɔ	-ndhrɔ

1. The rules of orthography of Calcutta University, given in the Bengali dictionary চলন্তিকা, p.597, recommend that this practice be discontinued.
2. For transcription, see p.230.
3. Cf.Sanskrit,Ch.3,3.C1.3.iii.a.

Reading examples[1]

ক্রুদ্ধ গ্রাম ঘ্রেয় বজ্র পুত্র দ্রব্য প্রণাম প্রিয়
ভ্রমর ব্যগ্র আশ্রয় সম্রাট স্রুত ভ্রূ বধ্র ব্রত শ্রী
হ্রিত অশ্রু প্রার্থনা আহ্ব উচ্ছ্রয় সক্রান্ত পক্র সম্রহ

iv. Characters with preceding ল্ or with following ল .[2]

a. ল্ preceding another character.

Characters joined with preceding ল্ are formed by writing the second character either immediately after, or below, ল , thus:- ক্ল , lkə , গ্ল , lgə , প্ল , lpə , ম্ল , lmə . Only a few of the Bengali characters occur with preceding ল , and these are illustrated below in the reading examples.

b. ল following another character.

These characters are formed by writing ল at the foot of the character after which it is to be realised, thus - ক্ল , klə , গ্ল , glə , প্ল , plə , ম্ল , mlə , শ্ল , ʃlə . The character হ্ is not combined with ল in a conjunct character, but the two characters are written consecutively, thus হ্ল . When ল , or a modified form of it, is added to another character as the second part of a conjunct character, it is referred to as ləphəla(ləphola). Only a few of these characters occur, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords. Those which occur are illustrated below in the reading examples.

The realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar and in certain positions, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class is illustrated in these

1. For transcription, see p.230.
2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.iv.a. and b.

words: বিলকুল , bilәkulә(bil'kul), মতলব , mәtәlәbә(mәt'lәb).

Reading examples[1]

উল্কা বল্গিত ফাল্গুন উল্টা গল্প গুল্ফ প্রগল্‌ভ গুল্ম উল্ব
ক্লান্ত গ্লেপন প্লাবন তল্লক ম্লান শ্লোক অশ্লীল হ্লাদ

Class 4. vərgiiýə characters joined with preceding or following uuṣmə characters.

i. Characters combined with preceding শ্ , ষ্ or স্

a. শ্ , ষ্ or স্ preceding another character.[2]

Characters which occur with preceding শ্ :-

শ্চ	শ্ছ	শ্ন	শ্ম
-ʃcə	-ʃchə	-ʃnə	ʃmə

Characters which occur with preceding ষ্ :-

ষ্ক	ষ্ট	ষ্ঠ	ষ্ণ	ষ্প	ষ্ফ	ষ্ম
-ṣkə	-ṣṭə	-ṣṭhə	-ṣṇə	-ṣpə	-ṣphə	-ṣmə

Words with cursive forms:

কৃষ্ণ পষ্ট জ্যেষ্ঠ পুষ্প নিষ্ফল নিষ্ফল

The character ষ্ combined with the characters of the ṭə-vərgə , except with ণ , ṇə , is realised as (ṣɔ). When combined with ণ the conjunct character is realised as (ʃnɔ). The characters ষ্ক , ṣkə , ষ্প , ṣpə , and ষ্ফ , ṣphə are realised as (ʃkɔ), (ʃpɔ) and (ʃphɔ) in ordinary speech, but may be realised as (ṣkɔ), (ṣpɔ) and (ṣphɔ) in formal speech. শ্ন , ʃnə , is usually realised as (snɔ).

1. For transcription, see p.230. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.

Characters which occur with preceding স্ :-

স্ক স্খ স্ত স্থ স্ন স্প স্ফ স্ম
ske skhe ste sthe sne spe sphe sme

The character স্ combined with characters of the ta-varga is realised as (s). Note the form of the character স্তু , stu .

The characters শ্ম , ʃme , and স্ম , sme , ekar or akar, are realised initially as (ʃ͡ɔ) and (ʃ͡ā), as in the words শ্মশ্রু , ʃmeʃru (ʃ͡ɔʃru) and স্মারক , smareke(ʃ͡ārok). These two characters, and ষ্ম , ʂme , are realised medially and finally as (ʃʃ͡ɔ), as in the words উষ্ম , uuʂme(uʃʃ͡ɔ) and ভস্ম , bhesme(bhɔʃʃ͡ɔ).

Conjunct characters of Classes 1., 2. and 3. may occur with preceding uuʂme characters, such as -

ষ্ট , -ʂtve , ষ্ট্র , -ʂtre , স্ট্র , -stre , স্ত্ব , -stve .

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar in certain positions, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class:

আসত , asete(aʃ'to)[1] চশমা , ceʃema(cɔʃ'ma)

Reading examples[2]

পশ্চাৎ নিশ্চয় নিশ্ছিদ্র আশ্চর্য প্রশ্ন নিষ্কৃত নষ্ট জ্যেষ্ঠ নিষ্ঠুর কৃষ্ণ নিষ্পত্তি নিষ্ফল গ্রীষ্ম স্কন্দ স্খলিত স্তব্ধ স্পর্শ স্মরণ স্বস্থ স্নান স্নিগ্ধ স্পষ্ট স্ফুটিত বিস্ময় স্মৃতি স্ত্রী রাষ্ট্র

b. Characters joined with following য or স .[3]

Three characters occur in this group, in Sanskrit loanwords: ক্ষ , kʂe , ৎস , -tse and প্স , -pse . In writing Sanskrit in Bengali

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.230.
3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.b.

script, however, characters corresponding to all the characters given in the Sanskrit section are used. The character ক্স , -ksə , occurs in English loanwords.

Cursive forms in words -

যুক্তাক্ষর শিক্ষা যক্ষ্মা পক্ষ্মন তীক্ষ্ণ তৎক্ষণাৎ

The character ক্ষ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the syllabary after the consonant characters. It does not, however, belong properly to the syllabary, as it represents a syllable consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel ə .[1] Words beginning with this character are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with ক্ব , kvə . It is realised initially as (khɔ) and medially and finally as (kkhɔ). The realisation of the characters ক্ষ , kṣṇə, and ক্ষ্ম , kṣmə , is illustrated in these examples:

ক্ষুত
kṣṇutə(khnuto)

তীক্ষ্ণ
tiikṣṇə(tikkhno)

সূক্ষ্ম
suukṣmə(ʃukkhõ)

When an əkar character is followed by ক্ষ , the inherent vowel is realised as (o), as in শ্লক্ষ্ণ , ʃləkṣṇə(ʃlokhno); and if ক্ষ is akar, the vowel sign may be realised as (æ), as in these words - রক্ষা , rəkṣa(rokkha, rokkhæ), যক্ষ্মা , yəkṣma(jokkhæ̃).

Reading examples[2]

অক্ষর পরিক্ষিত তৎক্ষণাৎ সূক্ষ্ম আর্ক্ষ মৎসর
বিপ্সা অপ্সরা খিন্ন ক্ষিণ্ণ

---

1. Cf. note on ঌ under Class 2. above.
2. For transcription, see p.230.

ii. হ joined with ənunasikə ('nasal') characters[1].

Three of the ənunasik characters are joined with হ :-

হ্ন -hnə হ্ন -hnə হ্ম -hmə

The characters হ্ন and হ্ন are realised as (nhɔ), and the character হ্ম is realised as (mhɔ).

Reading examples[2]

অপরাহ্ণ আহ্নিক চিহ্ন মধ্যাহ্ন ব্রহ্মা প্রাহ্ণ পূর্ব্বাহ্ণ

Bengali prose passage[3]

একদিন অপেক্ষাকৃত অল্পবয়সে যখন আমার শক্তি ছিল তখন কখনো কখনো ইংরেজি সাহিত্য মুখে মুখে বাংলা করে শুনিয়েচি আমার শ্রোতারা ইংরেজি জানতেন সবাই। তবু তাঁরা স্বীকার করেচেন ইংরেজি সাহিত্যের বাণী বাংলা ভাষায় তাঁদের মনে সহজে সাড়া পেয়েচে। বস্তুত আধুনিক শিক্ষা ইংরেজি ভাষাবাহিনী ব'লেই আমাদের মনের প্রবেশপথে তার অনেকখানি মারা যায়। ইংরেজি খানার টেবিলে আহারের জটিল পদ্ধতি যার অভ্যস্ত নয় এমন বাঙালীর ছেলে বিলেতে পাড়ি দেবার পথে পি এণ্ড ও কোম্পানীর ডিনার কামরায় যখন খেতে বসে, তখন ভোজ্য ও রসনার মধ্যপথে কাঁটা-ছুরির দৌত্য তার পক্ষে বাধাগ্রস্ত ব'লেই ভরপূর ভোজের মাঝখানেও ক্ষুধিত জঠরের দাবী সম্পূর্ণ মিটতে চায় না। আমাদের শিক্ষার ভোজেও সেই দশা,—আছে সবই অথচ মাঝপথে অনেকখানি অপচয় হয়ে যায়। এ যা বলচি এ কলেজি যজ্ঞের কথা, আমার আজকের আলোচ্য বিষয় এ নিয়ে নয়। আমার বিষয়-

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.4.11. 2. For transcription, see p.230.
3. Rabindranath Tagore, Śikṣaṇa Vikiraṇa, an address on university training, pub. University of Calcutta, 1933.

টা সর্ব্বসাধারণের শিক্ষা নিয়ে। শিক্ষার জলের কল চালানোর কথা নয়, পাইপ যেখানে পৌঁছয় না সেখানে পানীয়ের ব্যবস্থার কথা। মাতৃভাষায় সেই ব্যবস্থা যদি গোষ্পদের চেয়ে প্রশস্ত না হয় তবে এই বিদ্যাহারা দেশের মরুবাসী মনের উপায় হবে কী।

Examples of Bengali spelling terms, including conjunct characters:

পগ্গড়	(pɔ, gɔe gɔ, ɖɔe ʃunno ɽɔ)
হিস্সা	(hɔe hrɔʃʃo ikar, donto ʃɔe hɔʃonto, donto ʃɔe akar)
তিব্বৎ	(tɔe hrɔʃʃo ikar, bɔe bɔphola, khɔɳɖo tɔ)
শক্তি	(talobbo ʃɔ, kɔe tɔ tate hrɔʃʃo ikar)
জ্ঞান	(borgiyo jɔe ɲɔe akar, donto nɔ)
জন্ম	(borgiyo jɔ, donto nɔe mɔphola)
ঢুন্ঠিত	(ɖhɔe hrɔʃʃo ukar, murdhonno nɔe ɖhɔ tate hrɔʃʃo ikar, tɔ)
ট্যাঁ	(ʈɔe jɔpholae cɔndrobindu tate akar)
সন্ধ্যা	(donto ʃɔ, donto nɔe dhɔe jɔphola, tate akar)
ঈশ্বর	(dirgho i, talobbo ʃɔe bɔphola, reph rɔ)
আর্য	(ʃori a, ɔntostho jɔe reph)
সর্ব্ব	(donto ʃɔ, bɔe bɔphola tate reph)
উচ্ছ্বয়	(hrɔʃʃo u, cɔe chɔe rɔphola, ɔntostho ɔ)
শ্লোক	(talobbo ʃɔe lɔphola tate okar, kɔ)
সংস্কৃত	(donto ʃɔ, onuʃʃor, donto ʃɔe kɔ tate riphola, tɔ)
নিশ্চয়	(nɔe hrɔʃʃo ikar, talobbo ʃɔe cɔ, ɔntostho ɔ)
স্ত্রী	(donto ʃɔe tɔe rɔphola tate dirgho ikar)
শিক্ষা	(talobbo ʃɔe hrɔʃʃo ikar, khyɔe akar)
গ্রীষ্ম	(gɔe rɔphola tate dirgho ikar, murdhonno ʃɔe mɔphola)

Transcription of Reading Examples[1]

Chapter 2.

1.i. kə chə nə pə də ɖhə jə ʈə tə khə thə
kɔ chɔ nɔ pɔ dɔ ɖhɔ jɔ ʈɔ tɔ khɔ thɔ

nədə nəkhə ʈəkə pədə khəɽə jhəɽə ghəʈə pəthə təʈə
nɔd nɔkh ʈɔk pɔd khɔɽ jhɔɽ ghɔʈ pɔth tɔʈ

kətə bəɽə ghənə pəʈə gətə pətə jəɽə nətə tətə
kɔto bɔɽo ghono pɔʈo gɔto pɔto jɔɽo nɔto tɔto

bənə jənə mənə kəɳə
bon jon mon kon

phəʈəkə kətəkə jəgət ghəʈəkə
phɔʈɔk kɔtɔk jɔgɔt ghɔʈɔk

cəʈəpəʈə kəʈəkəʈə kəcəməcə ɖhəkəməkə khəʈəkhəʈə
cəʈ'pəʈ kəʈ'kəʈ kəc'məc ɖhək'mək khəʈ'khəʈ

thəkəthəkə gəɽəgəɽə ʈəpəʈəpə təkətəkə dhəpədhəpə
thək'thək gəɽ'gəɽ ʈəp'ʈəp tək'tək dhəp'dhəp

1.ii. kələ ghərə mələ pərə bələ rəkə dələ rəthə phələ
kəl ghər məl pər bəl rək dəl rəth phəl

jətə
jəto

bədələ gələdə mələjə nəgərə gələnə
bədəl gələd məlɔj nəgər gələn

khərətərə phələkərə kələrəvə
khərətər phələkər kələrəb

1.iii. ʃəvə səbə dəʃə səkhə
ʃəb səb dəʃ ʃəkh

ʃətə səmə hətə hərə
ʃəto ʃomo hɔto hɔro

səhərə səhəjə səɽələ hələphə
ʃəhər ʃəhɔj ʃəɽəl həlɔph

---

1. Brackets are omitted in the phonetic transcription in order to make it possible to place this transcription immediately below each word in the systematic transcription.

khəsəkhəsə	ʧəsəʧəsə	tələtələ	ɖhələɖhələ			
khɔʃ'khɔʃ	ʧəʃ'ʧəʃ	təl'təl	ɖhəl'ɖhəl			
səhəcərə	səmətələ	ghənərəsə	ghənəkəphə	mədəkəʧə	jələkərə	
ʃəhocər	ʃəmotəl	ghənorəʃ	ghənokəph	mədokəʧ	jəlokər	

2.i.	a	i	u	e	əў	o	əv	
	a	i	u	e	oi	o	ou	
aʦə	iʦə	uʦə	amə	rɳə	uunə	erə	orə	iidə
aʦ	iʦ	uʦ	am	rin	un	er	or	id
isə	iʦələ	itərə	iʂət	utərə	udəkə	etət		
iʃ	iʦol	itor	iʃot	utor	udok	etot		
eləmə	otənə	əvʂədhə	əvrətə	əvʂənə				
elom	oton	ouʃodh	ourot	ouʃon				
iiʃə	oɽə	ərə	əpə	eɳə	oghə	otə	əvmə	iitə	əgə
iʃo	oɽo	ɔro	ɔpo	eno	ogho	oto	oumo	ito	ogo
itə	ibə	ukhə	utə	əўkə	olə	oʂə			
ito	ibo	ukho	uto	oiko	olo	oʃo			

2.ii.	ca	thu	se	go	kuu	jhi	ʃii	məv	nr	chi
	ca	thu	ʃe	go	ku	jhi	ʃi	mou	nri	chi
otu	rʂi	alo	ɖao	yui	ɖheu	ruʦi	krpa	guru		
otu	riʃi	alo	ɖao	jui	ɖheu	ruʦi	kripa	guru		
moʦa	ʃiʃu	ruupa	mane	hrdi	niiti	hurii	nəvka			
moʦa	ʃiʃu	rupa	mane	hridi	niti	huri	nouka			
godhuli	jiivika	kumarii	dagabaji	kəpotika	nirupadhi					
godhuli	jibika	kumari	dagabaji	kɔpotika	nirupadhi					

p.198.	tinə	dudhə	duurə	niilə	cokhə	meghə	ʃrgalə	motalebə		
	tin	dudh	dur	nil	cokh	megh	ʃrigal	motaleb		
jutə	titə	guuɽhə	mrgə	choʦə	drɽhə	məvnə	ʂolə	dhəvtə	mrtə	
juto	tito	guɽho	mrigo	choʦo	driɽho	mounə	ʃolə	dhouto	mrito	
cakərə	sahəsə	pathərə	pagələ	kəvʃələ	devərə					
cakor	ʃəhoʃ	pathor	pagol	kouʃol	debor					
tomərə	ʧukərə	kaməra	cupɽi	mucəki	taləpatə	gəgənəbhela				
tom'ra	ʧuk'ra	kam'ra	cup'ɽi	muc'ki	tal'pat	gɔgɔn'bhela				
lekh	lekhə	thak	thakə	jan	janə	jitəbə	jitəbo			
lekh	lekho	thak	thako	jan	jano	jit'bo	jit'bo			
ʃunətə	ʃunəto	jagələ	jagəlo	bhijətə	tuləbə	ʃunələ				
ʃun'to	ʃun'to	jag'lo	jag'lo	bhij'to	tul'bo	ʃun'lo				
bəi	kəi	khəi	nədii	yədi	yəti	bəli	bəsi	səlilə		
boi	koi	khoi	nodi	jodi	joti	boli	boʃi	ʃolil		

cəlitə colit	səhitə ʃohit	jəmidarə jomidar	əbhidhanə obhidhan	gəlitə golito	pəlitə polito

pəlu polu	pəʈu poʈu	mədhurə modhur	mərut morut	bəlukə boluk	phəturə photur	bəhut bohut

3.i.a.	ərə ər	ərə ər	akə ak	hã hã	cĩ cĩ	cõ cõ	ʈũ ʈũ	tã tã	dhã dhã	rõ rõ	bhũi bhũi

yũi jũi	tũsə tũʃ	ʈhãi ʈhãi	cãcə cãc	chẽkə chẽk	ɖãɽə ɖãɽ	ghõʈə ghõʈ	kũdələ kũdol	bẽdhe bẽdhe

jãka jãka	dãɽi dãɽi	khõpa khõpa	dhũdhulə dhũdhul	põciʃə põciʃ	hãkaɽi hãkaɽi	

b.	nəm nəŋ	ʈəm ʈəŋ	gam gaŋ	əmʃə əŋʃo	dəmʃənə dəŋʃon	ʃəmsa ʃəŋʃa	ʈhəmʈhəm ʈhəŋʈhəŋ	vamʃo baŋʃo

səmghatə ʃəŋghat	səmvit ʃəŋbit	pamʃu paŋʃu	sutəram ʃutəraŋ	əvətəmsə obotəŋʃo	nəmʃukə nəŋʃuk	

səmyəmənə ʃəŋjomon	vəmʃədhərə bəŋʃodhor	səmʃodhənə ʃəŋʃodhon	samghatikə ʃaŋghatik	kəmsəha kəŋʃəha

ii.	əruh oruh	sərəh ʃoroh	punəh punoh	səhəh ʃohoh	nihsukhə niʃʃukh	ətəhpərə otoppor

ʃətaýuh ʃotayuh	nəbhəhsəd nobhoʃʃod	əcetah ocetah	duhsəməýə duʃʃomoy	bahsədənə baʃʃodon

nihkarəɳə nikkaron	həvihʃəsə hobiʃʃeʃ	vənəvkah bonoukah	nihkasənə nikkaʃon	duhsəhə duʃʃoho

Chapter 3.

Class 1.

pəkkə pokko	kəkkhəʈə kokkhoʈ	pəggəɽə poggoɽ	kəccərə koccor	iccha iccha	ləjja ləjja	kujjhəʈika kujjhoʈika	

ʈhaʈʈa ʈhaʈʈa	uḍḍiinə uḍḍin	ʃənnəbətə ʃonnobəto	uttərə uttor	utthanə utthan	cəvddə couddo	ʃuddhə ʃuddho	kanna kanna

chəppərə chəppor	chabbiʃə chabbiʃ	ummedə ummed	ʃəyya ʃojja	phullə phullo	mənəʃʃanti monoʃʃanti	hissa hiʃʃa, hisse	

viʃəɳɳə biʃonno	səhayyə ʃahajjo	səddarə ʃoddar	tibbət tibbot	pəricchənnə poricchonno	vrddhə briddho	cittə citto	

Class 2.

i.	ʃəkti ʃokti	vagḍanə bagdan	udgəmənə udgomon	udghatə udghat	ədbhutə odbhut	ʃəbdə ʃobdo	utpəthə utpoth	dəgdhə dogdho

guptə gupto	utkərə utkor	utphullə utphullo	utpənnə utponno	cəmətkarə comotkar	utkhatə utkhat	ʂəʈkoɳə ʃoʈkon

ii. ələŋkarə ʃəŋkhə səŋgətə səŋghəʈənə əɲcələ laɲchənə əɲjəli
ɔləŋkar ʃɔŋkho ʃɔŋgɔto ʃɔŋghɔʈon ɔncol lanchona onjoli

jhəɲjhaʈə kəɳʈəkii kəɳʈha paɳɖa ɖhuɳɖhitə ʃanti pənthii ninda
jhonjhaʈ kəɳʈoki kɔɳʈha paɳɖa ɖhuɳɖhito ʃanti ponthi ninda

əndhə səmpədə ləmphə əmbərə səmbhəvə jɲanə jijɲasa pətnii pəɱkti
ondho ʃəmpod ləmpho ɔmbor ʃəmbhob gæn jiggëʃa potni poŋkti

iii. ʃəkmə səŋləgnə atmə pnə vəgmii
ʃəkkä ʃɔŋləgno attä pnə baggĭ

iv. unməgnə jənmə nimnoktə vəɱməýə ʂəɳməsə
unməgno jənmo nimnokto bəŋŋɔ̃y ʃənməʃ

Class 3.i.

vakyə khyatə yogyəta cyəvənə cyutə jyoti jyeʈha ʈyä
bakko khæto joggota cəbon cuto joti jæʈha ʈæ̃

ʈhyəŋ ɖhyäɖə puɳyə yətyəcarə ətyuttəmə ətyəýə sətyə
ʈhæŋ ɖhäɖə punno jottəcar ottuttomo ottəy ʃotto

bhrtyerə mitthyə gədyə dyuməni əbadhyə dhyanə dhyeýə nyaýə
bhritter mitthə goddo dumoni əbaddho dhæn dheyo næy

nyuunə upənyasə pyanə rəv̆pyə əbhyasə myao kəlyanə taləvyə
nun uponnæʃ pæn rouppo obbhæʃ mæo kollæn taləbbo

vyəɲjənə ʃyamə mənuʂyə syədə səhyə udyanə səndhya səŋkhyeýə
bænjon ʃæm monuʃʃo ʃəd ʃojjho uddæn ʃondhæ ʃoŋkheyo

Class 3.ii.

kvəcit pəkvə ucchvasə jvalə tvərə təttvə dhvəɳsə vilvə
kocit pəkko ucchaʃ jal tərə totto dhoɳʃo billo

iiʃvərə svəcchə ənveʂənə svədeʃə sərəsvəti ʃvasə jihva
iʃʃor ʃəccho onneʃon ʃədeʃ ʃoroʃʃoti ʃaʃ jibha

Class 3.iii.

a. tərkə muurkhə vərgiiýə diirghə varccə muurcchənə sərjju vərɳə
tərko murkho bərgiyo dirgho barəco murcchon ʃərju borno

kərttəvyə
kortobbo

pədarthə kərddəʈə ərddhə durnamə sərpə səmərpəɳə dhərmə məryyada
pədartho kərdoʈ ərdho durnam ʃərpo ʃəmərpon dhərmo morjæda

durləbhə
durləbh

vəhirbhutə sərvvə mərʃənə mərʂəɳə gərhəɳə aryyə visərgə sərddarə
bohirbhuto ʃorbo morʃon mərʃon gərhon arjo biʃorgo ʃordar

iii.b. kruddhə gramə ghreýə vəjrə putrə drəvyə prəɳamə priýə
kruddho gram ghreyo bɔjro putro drobbo pronam priyo

bhrəmərə vyəgrə aʃreýə səmraʈə srutə sruu vədhrə vrətə ʃrii
bhromor bəgro asrɔy ʃomraʈ sruto sru bodhro brɔt sri

hritə əʃru prarthəna andhrə ucchreýə səŋkrantə pəktrə səŋgrəhə
hrito osru prarthona andhro ucchroy ʃoŋkranto pɔktro ʃoŋgroho

Class 3.iv.

ulkə vəlgitə phalguɳə ulʈa gəlpə gulphə prəgəlbhə gulmə ulbə
ulka bolgito phalgun ulʈa gɔlpo gulpho progolbho gulmo ulbo

klantə glepənə plavənə təbləkə mlanə ʃlokə əʃliilə hladə
klanto glepon plabon təblɔk mlan ʃlok oʃlil hlad

Class 4.i.

a. pəʃcat niʃcəýə niʃchidrə aʃcəryə prəʃnə niʂkrtə nəʂtə jyeʂthə
pɔʃcat niʃcoy niʃchidro aʃcorjo proʂno niʂkrito nɔʃʈo jeʃʈho

niʂthurə krʂnə niʂpətti niʂphələ griiʂmə skəndə skhəlitə
niʃʈhur kriʃno niʃpotti niʃphɔl griʃʃõ skondo skholito

stəbdhə spərʃə
stɔbdho sporʃo

smərəɳə svəsthə snanə snigdhə spəʂtə sphuʈitə viʂməýə
ʃõron ʃostho snan snigdho spoʃʈo sphuʈito biʃʃõy

smrti strii raʂtrə
sriti stri raʃʈro

b. əkʂərə pərikʂitə tətkʂəɳat suukʂmə arkʂə mətʂərə vipʂa
okkhor porikkhito tɔtkhonat ʃukkhõ arkkho mɔtʃor bipʃa

əpʂərə khinnə kʂviɳɳə
ɔpʃora khinno khinno

Class 4.ii.

əpərahɳə ahnikə cihnə mədhyahnə brəhma prahɳə puurvvahɳə
ɔporanho anhik cinho moddhɔnho bromha pranho purbbanho

Bengali prose passage

ekədinə əpekʂakrtə əlpəvəẏəse yəkhənə amarə ʃəkti chilə təkhənə
ækdin əpekkhakrito olpobɔyʃe jəkhon amar ʃokti chilo təkhon

kəkhənə kəkhənə iŋreji sahityə mukhe mukhe baŋla kəre ʃuniẏeci. amarə
kəkhono kəkhono iŋreji ʃahitto mukhe mukhe baŋla kore ʃuniyeci. amar

ʃrotara iŋreji janətenə səvai. təvu tāra siikarə kərecenə iŋreji
srotara iŋreji jan'ten ʃobai. tobu tāra ʃikar korecen iŋreji

sahityerə vaɳii baŋlabhaʂaẏə tāderə mənə səhəje saɽa peẏece. vəstutə
ʃahitter bani baŋlabhaʃay tāder mone ʃohoje ʃaɽa peyece. bostuto

adhunikə ʃikʂa iŋreji bhaʂavahinii bəlei amaderə mənerə prəveʃəpəthe
adhunik ʃikkha iŋreji bhaʃabahini bolei amader moner probeʃ'pothe

tarə ənekəkhani mara yaẏə. iŋreji khanarə ʈebile aharerə jəʈilə
tar onek'khani mara jay. iŋreji khanar ʈebile aharer joʈil

pəddhəti yarə əbhyəstə nəẏ emənə baŋaliirə chele bilete paɽi debarə
poddhoti jar obbhosto noy æmon baŋalir chele bilete paɽi debar

pəthe pi enḍə o kompaniirə ḍinarə kamaraẏ yəkhənə kheʈə bəse təkhənə
pothe pi enḍ o kompanir ḍinar kam'ray jokhon khete bɔʃe tokhon

bhojyə o rəsənarə mədhyəpəthe kāʈa churirə dəʔtyə tarə pəkʂe badha-
bhojjo o roʃonar moddhopothe kāʈa churir douttо tar pokkhe badha-

grəstə bəlei bhərəpuurə bhojerə maj̃həkhaneo kʂudhitə jəʈhərerə ḍavii
grosto bolei bhor'pur bhojer maj̃h'khaneo khudhito joʈhorer ḍabi

səmpuurɳə miʈəte caẏə na. amaderə ʃikʂarə bhojeo sei dəʃa, - ache
ʃompurno miʈ'te cay na. amader ʃikkhar bhojeo ʃei dɔʃa, - ache

səvəi əthəcə maj̃hepəthe ənekəkhani əpəcəẏə həẏe yaẏə. e ya bəleci e
ʃobi othoco maj̃h'pothe onek'khani opocoy hoye jay. e ja bol'ci e

kəleji yəj̃nerə kətha, amarə aj̃əkerə alocyə viʂəẏə e niẏe nəẏə.
kəleji joggĕr kotha, amar aj̃'ker alocco biʃoye e niye noy.

amarə viʂəẏəʈa sərvvəsadharəɳerə ʃikʂa niẏe. ʃikʂarə jəlerə kələ
amar biʃoyʈa ʃorboʃadharoner ʃikkha niye. ʃikkhar jəler kəl

calanorə kətha nəẏə, paipə yekhane põṽchəẏə na sekhane paniiẏerə
calanor kotha noy, paip jekhane põuchoy na ʃekhane paniyer

vyəvəsthərə kətha. matrbhaʂaẏə sei vyəvəstha yədi goʂpəderə ceẏe prə-
bæbosthar kotha. matribhaʃay ʃei bæbostha jodi goʃpoder ceye pro-

ʃəstə na həẏə təve ei vidyəharə ḍeʃerə məruvasii mənerə upaẏə həbe kii.
ʃosto na hoy tobe ei biddæharə ḍeʃer moruboʃi moner upay hobe ki.

PRINTED IN
GREAT BRITAIN
AT THE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
OXFORD
BY
CHARLES BATEY
PRINTER
TO THE
UNIVERSITY

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY,
NEW DELHI
Issue Record.
Catalogue No. 417.8/Lam.-3374.
...r—Lamsert, H.M.
...duction ...